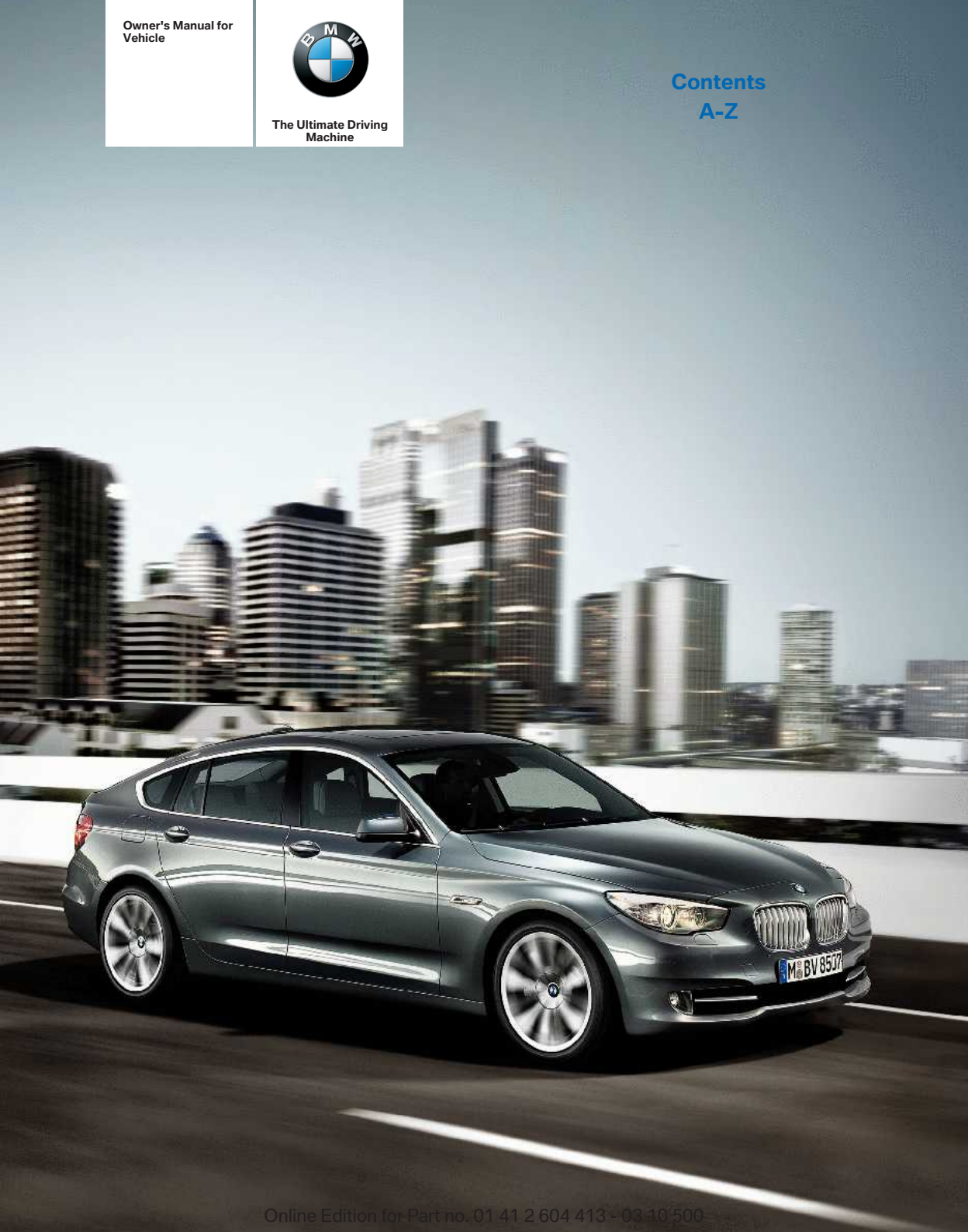
Owner's Manual for Vehicle

The Ultimate Driving Machine

Contents
A-Z



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

535i
550i

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

Supplementary information can be found in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable drive.

BMW AG

BMW recommends Castrol

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

© 2010 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written
consent of BMW AG, Munich.
English III/10, 03 10 500
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 266.

Using this Owner's Manual
6 Notes

At a glance
12 Cockpit
19 iDrive
25 Voice activation system
27 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Controls
32 Opening and closing
48 Adjusting
61 Transporting children safely
65 Driving
75 Displays
86 Lamps
90 Safety
101 Driving stability control systems
107 Driving comfort
128 Climate control
134 Interior equipment
140 Storage compartments

Driving tips
146 Things to remember when driving

Navigation
154 Navigation

Entertainment
172 Tone
174 Radio
181 CD/multimedia
196 Rear entertainment

Communication
204 Telephone
213 Contacts
216 BMW Assist

Mobility
224 Refueling
226 Fuel
227 Wheels and tires
234 Engine compartment
236 Engine oil
238 Maintenance
240 Replacing components
246 Breakdown assistance
251 Care

Reference
256 Technical data
259 Short commands for voice activation system
266 Everything from A to Z

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any questions, your service center will be glad to advise you at any time.

Information on BMW, e.g., on technology, is available on the Internet: bmwusa.com.

Symbols

⚠ Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◄ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional accessories, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

»...« Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

♲ Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

Symbols on vehicle components

📖 Recommends that you study the relevant section of this Owner's Manual in connection with a particular part or assembly.

Your individual vehicle

You have decided in favor of a vehicle with individualized equipment and features.

This Owner's Manual describes the entire array of options and equipment available for a specific model.

As a result, the manual may contain accessories and equipment that you may not have specified for your own vehicle.

All options and special equipment are marked with an asterisk *.

For options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

On right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently than shown in the illustrations.

Status at publication

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair methods.

Therefore, have this work performed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with appropriately trained personnel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends using parts and accessories approved by BMW for this purpose.

Your BMW center is the right contact for genuine BMW parts and accessories, other products approved by BMW and related qualified advice.

BMW has tested these products for safety and suitability in relation to BMW vehicles.

BMW can assume responsibility for them. However, we cannot assume any responsibility whatsoever for parts and accessories that have not been specifically approved by BMW.

BMW cannot evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard. This guarantee is also not applicable when country-specific government approval has been granted. Testing of this kind may fail to embrace the entire range of potential operating conditions to which components might be exposed on BMW vehicles. Such products could conceivably fail to comply with BMW's own stringent quality standards.

Parts and Accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW. When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle. BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship. BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW. BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants. Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers. Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information. Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

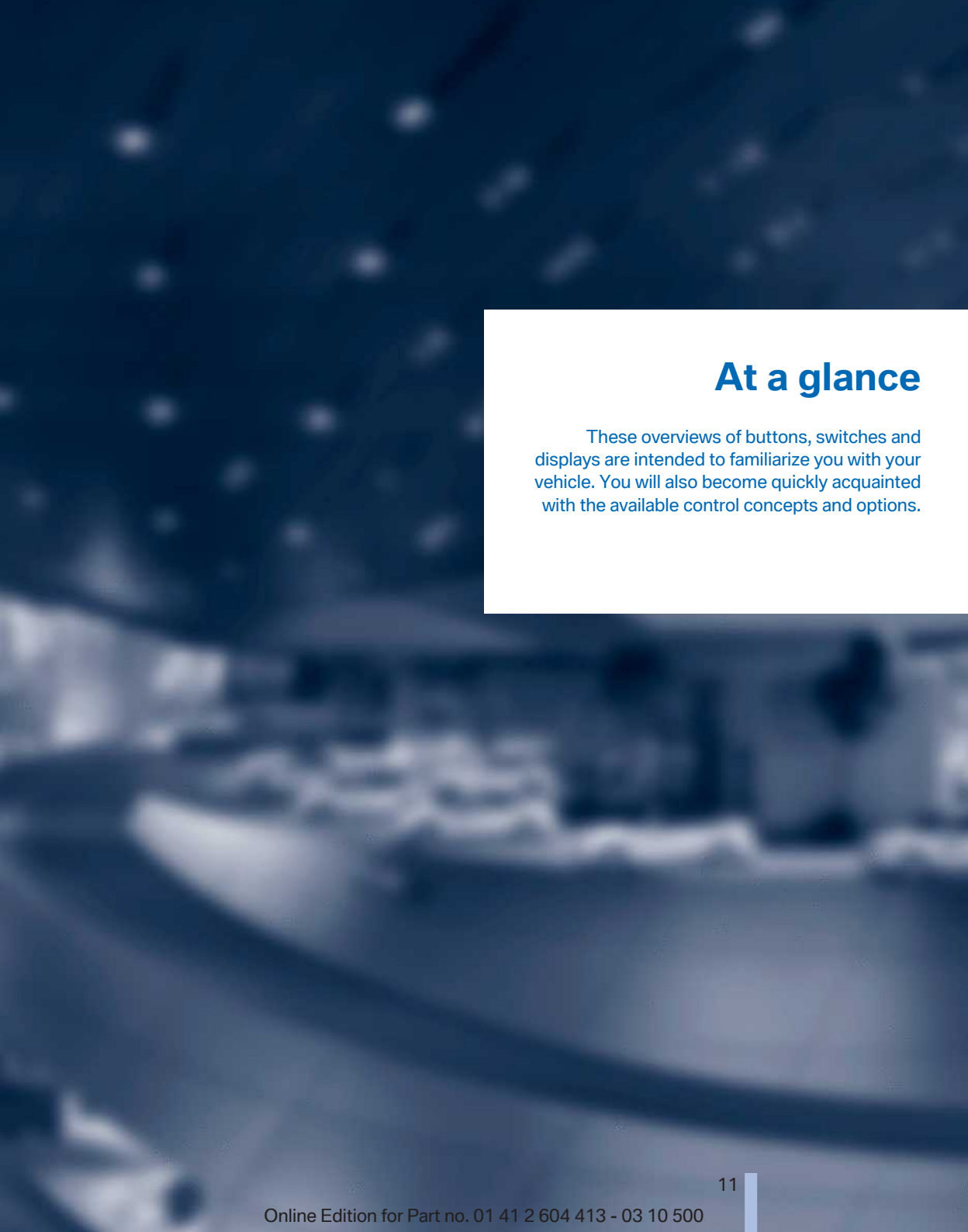
To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa ON K1A 0N5.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500



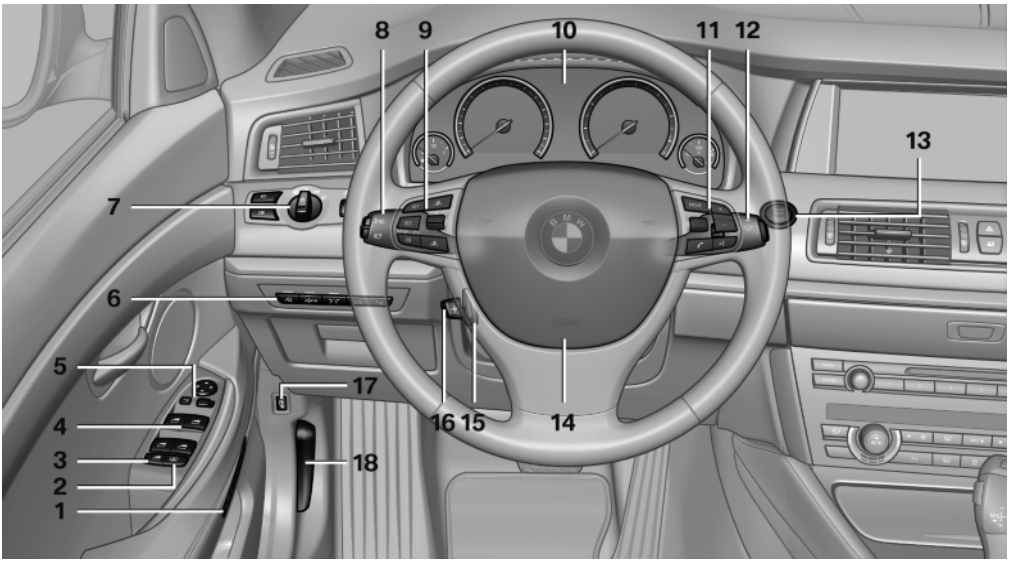
At a glance

These overviews of buttons, switches and displays are intended to familiarize you with your vehicle. You will also become quickly acquainted with the available control concepts and options.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Cockpit

All around the steering wheel



1 Seating comfort functions*

Seat, mirror, steering wheel memory* 57

Active seat* 50

2 Roller sunblinds* 45

3 Safety switch for the rear windows and roller sunblinds* 45

4 Power windows 44

5 Exterior mirror operation 58

6 Driver assistance systems*

Active Blind Spot Detection* 98

Collision warning* 112

Lane departure warning* 97

Night Vision with pedestrian detection* 123

Head-up Display* 126

7 Lamps

Front fog lamps 89

Parking lamps 86

Low beams 86

Automatic headlamp control* 87

Daytime running lights* 87

High-beam Assistant* 88

Instrument lighting 89

8 Steering column stalk, left

Turn signal 70

High beams, headlamp flasher 70

High-beam Assistant* 88

Roadside parking lamps 87

Computer* 78

9 Steering wheel buttons, left

Store speed 114, 108

Resume speed 115, 109

Cruise control on/off, interrupt 114, 107

Increase distance* 109

Decrease distance* 108

10 Instrument cluster 14

11 Steering wheel buttons, right

Entertainment source

Volume

Voice activation* 25

Telephone* 204

12 Steering column stalk, right

Windshield wipers 70

Rain sensor* 71

Clean the windshields and headlamps* 70

13

Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 65

14 Horn

15

Steering wheel heating* 60

16

Adjust the steering wheel 60

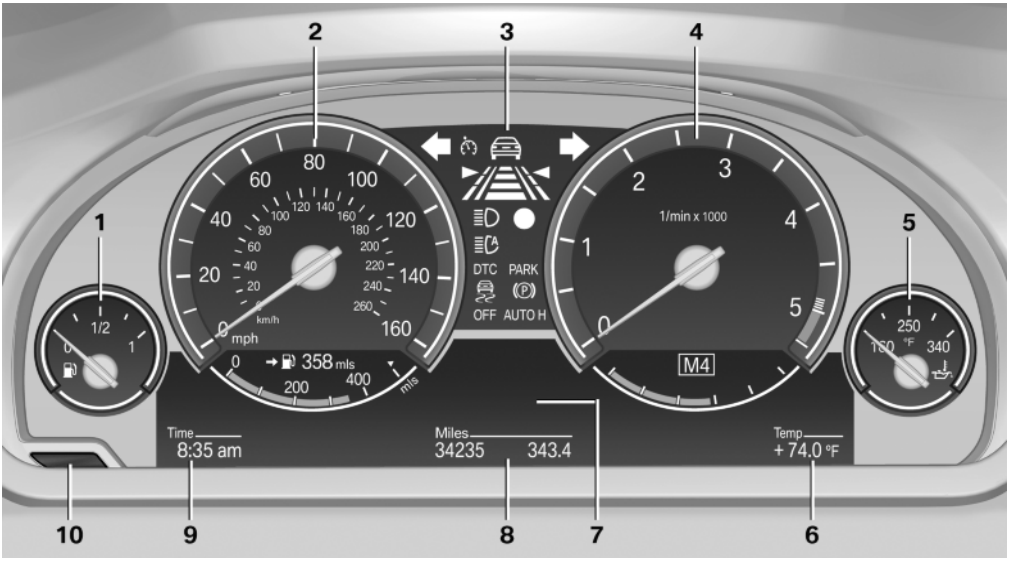
17

Open the tailgate* 39

18 Unlock the hood

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Instrument cluster



1 Fuel gauge 77
2 Speedometer
3 Indicator/warning lamps 14
4 Tachometer 76
5 Engine oil temperature 76
6 External temperature* 75
7 Electronic displays 16
8 Miles, trip miles 75
9 Clock* 80
10 Reset miles 75

Indicator/warning lamps

Instrument cluster

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on, and light up briefly in the process.

Overview: indicator/warning lamps

Symbol	Function or system
	Turn signal
	Parking brake
AUTO H	Automatic Hold
	Front fog lamps*
	High beams

Symbol	Function or system
	High-beam Assistant*
	Parking lamps, headlamp control
	Active Cruise Control*
	Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control*
	Cruise control*
	Lane departure warning*
	DSC Dynamic Stability Control
	DSC Dynamic Stability Control or DTC Dynamic Traction Control
	Tire Pressure Monitor Flat Tire Monitor
	Safety belts
	Airbag system

Symbol	Function or system
	Steering system
	Engine functions
	Brake system
	Brake system in Canadian models
	Antilock Brake System ABS
	Antilock Brake System ABS in Canadian models

Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lamps.

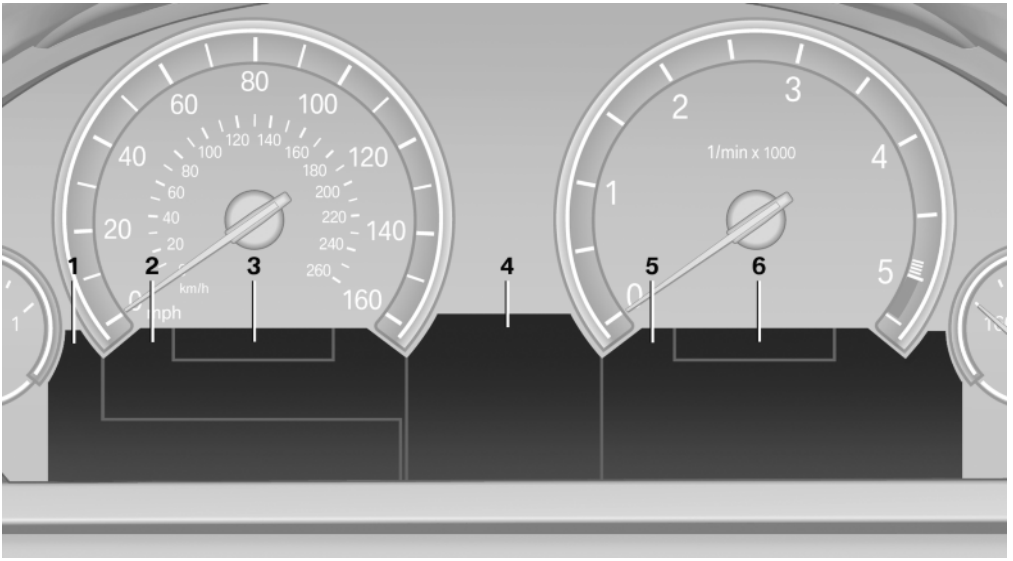
Supplementary text messages

Additional information on the Control Display, e.g., on the cause of a malfunction or the required action, can be called up via Check Control, refer to page 83.

The text of urgent messages is displayed automatically.

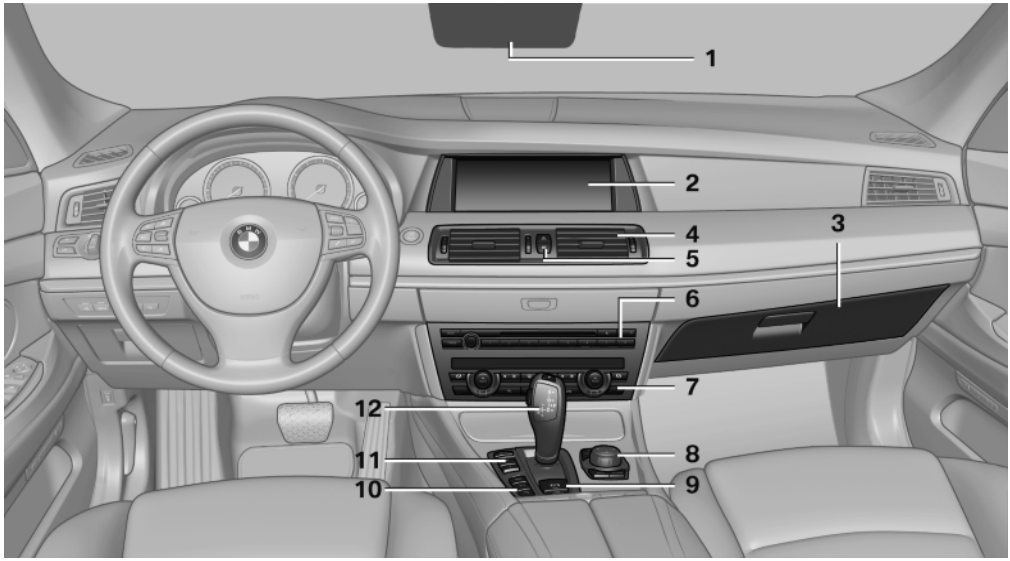
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Instrument cluster, electronic displays



1 Symbols and messages, e.g., warnings 14
2 Range 77
3 Computer* 78
4 Navigation display* 154
Service display 82
5 Selection list, e.g., radio 77
6 Transmission displays 74

All around the center console



1 Headliner 18

2 Control Display 19

3 Glove compartment 140

4 Air vent 131

5 Hazard warning system 246

Central locking system 38

6 Radio 174

CD/Multimedia 181

7 Automatic climate control 128

8 Controller with buttons 19

9 Parking brake 66

AUTO H Auto Hold 68

10 PDC Park Distance Control* 115

Top View* 118

Backup camera* 120

Side View* 122

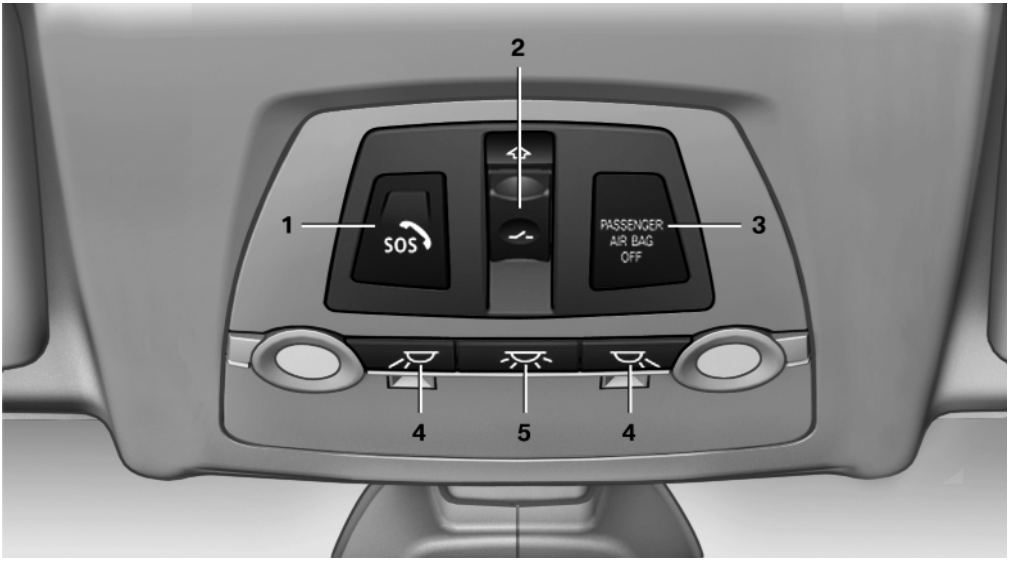
11 SPORT COMFORT Dynamic Driving Control 103

OFF DSC Dynamic Stability Control 103

12 Transmission selector lever

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

All around the headliner



1		Emergency Request* 246	4		Reading lamps* 89
2		Glass sunroof, powered* 45	5		Interior lamps 89
3		Indicator lamp, front passenger airbag* 92			

iDrive

The concept

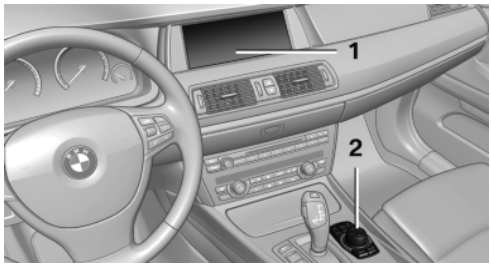
The iDrive combines the functions of a multitude of switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

Using the iDrive during a trip

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard to your vehicle's occupants and to other road users, never attempt to use the controls or enter information unless traffic and road conditions allow this.◄

Controls at a glance

Controls



1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and create the settings.

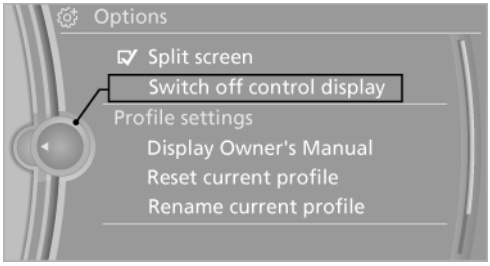
Control Display

Notes

- To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions, refer to page 253.
- Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.

Switching off

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Switch off control display"



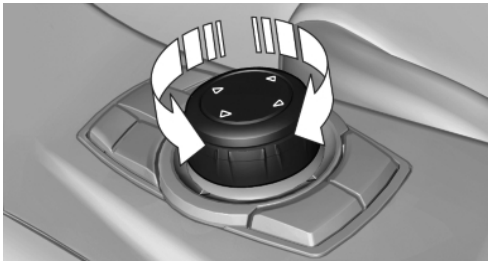
Switching on

Press the controller again to switch the screen back on.

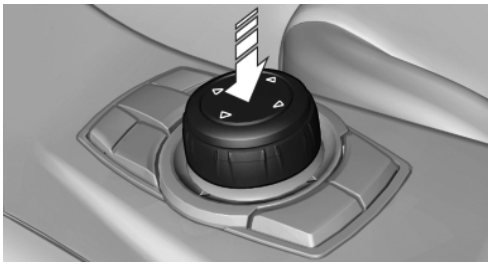
Controller

Select menu items and create settings.

1. Turn.

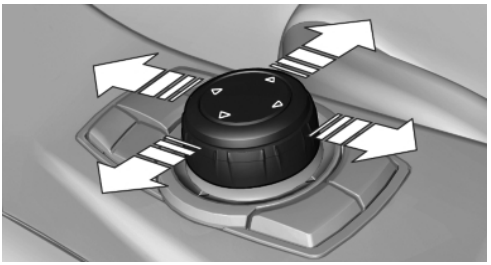


2. Press.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

3. Move in four directions.



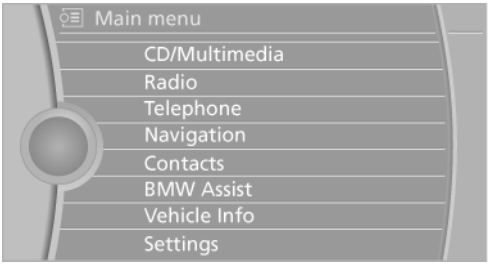
Buttons on controller

Press the button	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu.
RADIO	Opens the Radio menu.
CD	Opens the CD/Multimedia menu.
NAV	Opens the Navigation map view.
TEL	Opens the Telephone menu.
BACK	Displays the previous panel.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

Operating concept

Opening the main menu

MENU Press the button.



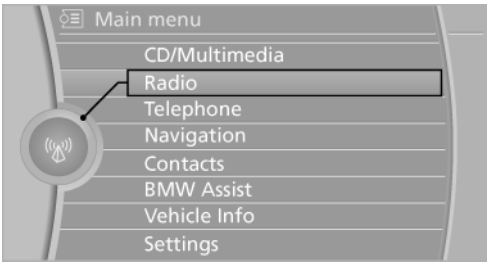
The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

Menu items shown in white can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Settings".

Changing between panels

After a menu item is selected, e.g., "Radio", a new panel is displayed. Panels can overlap.

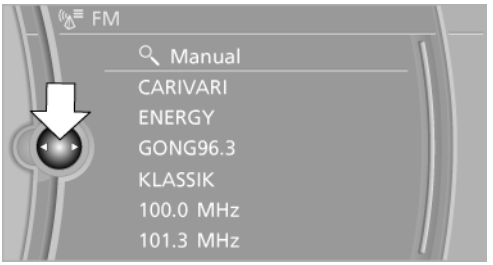
▷ Move the controller to the left.

The current panel is closed and the previous panel is displayed.

The previous panel is opened again by pressing the BACK button. In this case, the current panel is not closed.

▷ Move the controller to the right.

A new panel is opened on top of the previous display.



White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

View of an opened menu

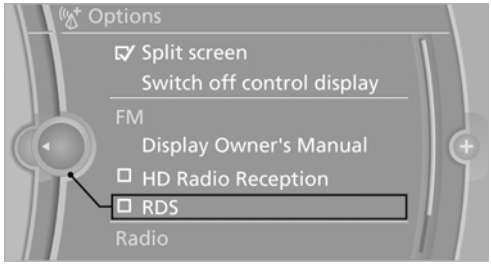
When a menu is opened, it generally opens with the panel that was last selected in that menu. To display the first panel of a menu:

- ▷ Move the controller to the left repeatedly until the first panel is displayed.
- ▷ Press the menu button on the controller twice.

Opening the Options menu

OPTION Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



Additional options: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

Options menu

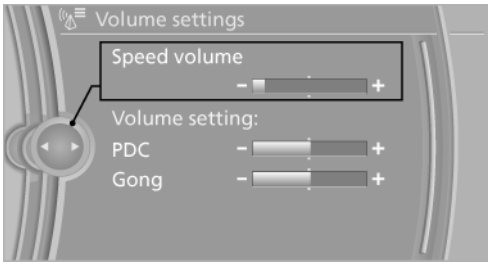
The "Options" menu consists of various areas:

- ▷ Screen settings, for instance. "Split screen".

  This area remains unchanged.
- ▷ Control options for the selected main menu, e.g., for "Radio".
- ▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, e.g., "Store station".

Changing settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the controller.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

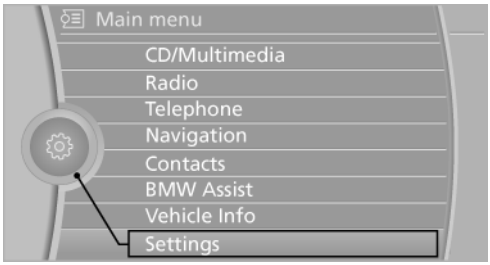
☑ The function is activated.

☐ The function is deactivated.

Example: setting the clock

Setting the clock

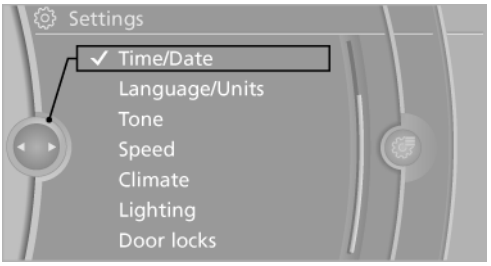
1. MENU Press the button. The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



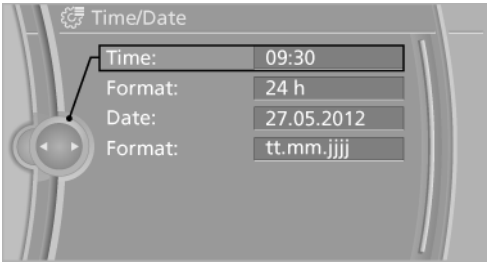
3. If necessary, move the controller to the left to display "Time/Date".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

4. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



5. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



6. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

Status information

Status field

The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:

- Time.
- Current entertainment source.
- Sound output, on/off.
- Wireless network reception strength.
- Telephone status.
- Traffic bulletin reception.

Status field symbols

The symbols are grouped as follows.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
TI	Traffic bulletins* switched on. One of the symbols is displayed.
HD	HD Radio* switched on.
	Satellite radio* switched on

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call*
	Missed call*
	Wireless network reception strength*. Symbol flashes: network search
	Wireless network not available*
	Bluetooth* activated
	Roaming* is active
	Text message received*
	Check SIM card*
	SIM card* blocked
	SIM card* missing
	Enter PIN*

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD* player
	Music collection*
gracenote	Gracenote® database*
	AUX-IN port
AUX-L	Rear AUX-IN port*
AUX-R	Rear AUX-IN port on the right*
	USB audio interface*

Additional symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Spoken instructions* switched off
	Request current vehicle position*

Split screen*

General information

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, e.g., information from the computer.

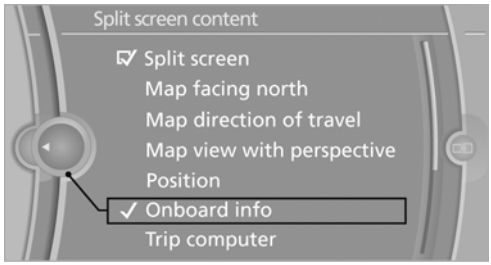
In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

Switching the split screen on and off

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Split screen"

Selecting the display

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller until the split screen is selected.
4. "Split screen content"
5. Select the desired menu item.



Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and entry points into the menu.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Saving a function

1. Highlight the function via the iDrive.
2. 1 ... 8 Press the desired button for more than 2 seconds.

Running a function

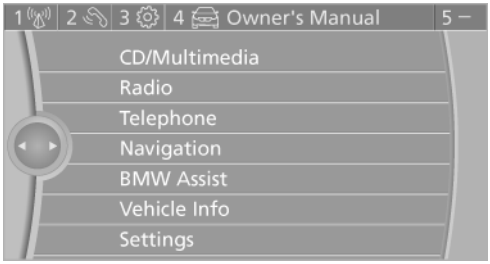
1 ... 8 Press the button.

The function will run immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the button assignment

Use a finger to touch the buttons. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The key assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.



- ▷ To display short information: touch the button.
- ▷ To display detailed information: touch the button for an extended period.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously for approx. five seconds.
2. "OK"

Entering letters and numbers

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

Symbol	Function
|←	Press the controller: delete the letter or number.
|←	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.
␣	Enter a blank space.

Switching between letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.

Switching between upper and lower case letters

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case letters:

Symbol	Function
▲ abc	Move the controller up: switch from upper to lower case letters.
▲ ABC	Move the controller up: switch from lower to upper case letters.

Entry comparison

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

The entries are continuously compared to the data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ Only those letters are offered during the entry for which data is available.
- ▷ Destination search: town/city names can be entered using the spelling of language available on the Control Display.

Voice activation system*

The concept

- The voice activation system can be used to operate equipment by means of spoken commands.
- The system encompasses special microphones on the outer edge of the headliner.
- Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands. The system prompts you to make your entries.
- ›...‹ Verbal instructions in the Owner's Manual to use with the voice activation system.

Requirements

On the Control Display, set the language to be used with the voice activation system to enable the system to identify the voice commands.

Set the language, refer to page 81.

Using voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Say the command.

   The command is displayed in the instrument cluster.

This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no further commands are available, continue operating the equipment via the iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Having possible commands read aloud

The commands available in each case depend on the menu item selected on the Control Display.

Have the available spoken instructions read aloud using ›Voice commands‹.

If, for example, ›Settings‹ is selected, the commands to the settings are read aloud.

Executing functions using short commands

Functions on the main menu can be performed directly by means of short commands, irrespective of which menu item is currently selected, e. g., ›Vehicle status‹.

List of short voice activation commands, refer to page 259.

Example: playing back a CD

1. Switch on the Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›C D and multimedia‹

   The medium last played is played back.
4. Press the button on the steering wheel.
5. ›C D track ... ‹ e.g., CD track 4.

Setting the voice dialog

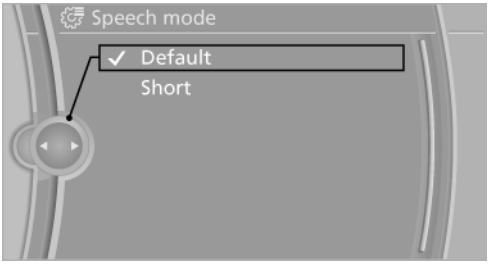
You can set whether the system should use the standard dialog or a shorter version.

In the shorter version of the voice dialog, the prompts and responses from the system are abbreviated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the setting.



Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button while giving an instruction until the desired volume is set.

- The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button*, refer to page 246, in the vicinity of the interior mirror.

Environmental conditions

- Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- When selecting a radio station, use the common pronunciation of the station name.
- Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Owner's Manual in the vehicle

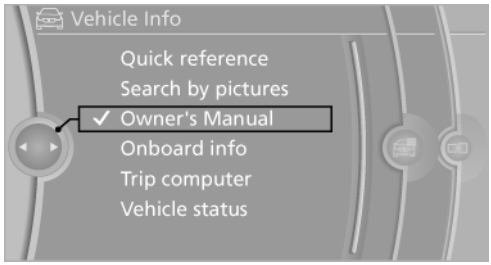
The Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display in accordance with the equipment selected.

Methods of opening the Owner's Manual

The following methods are available:

- Quick reference: "Quick reference"
- Key word search: "Owner's Manual"
- Using pictures: "Search by pictures"

1. MENU Press the button.
2. Turn the controller: open "Vehicle Info".
3. Press the controller.
4. Select "Quick reference", "Search by pictures" or "Owner's Manual".



Leafing through the Owner's Manual

Page by page with link access

Turn the controller until the next or previous page is displayed.

Page by page without link access

Leaf through the pages directly while skipping the links.

Highlight the symbol once. Now simply press the controller to leaf from page to page.

Leaf back.

Leaf forward.

Context-sensitive help - section of the Owner's Manual referring to the present function

The relevant information can be opened directly.

Opening via the iDrive

To move directly from the application on the Control Display to the options menu:

1. OPTION Press the button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Display Owner's Manual"

Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual

To change from a function, e.g., radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to switch between the two displays:

1. OPTION Press the button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
4. OPTION Press the button again to return to the function displayed last.
5. BACK Press the button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

To switch back and forth repeatedly between the function displayed last and the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last, repeat steps 4 and 5. This opens a new panel every time.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 23, and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select "Owner's Manual" via the iDrive.
2. 1 ... 8 Press the desired button for more than 2 seconds.

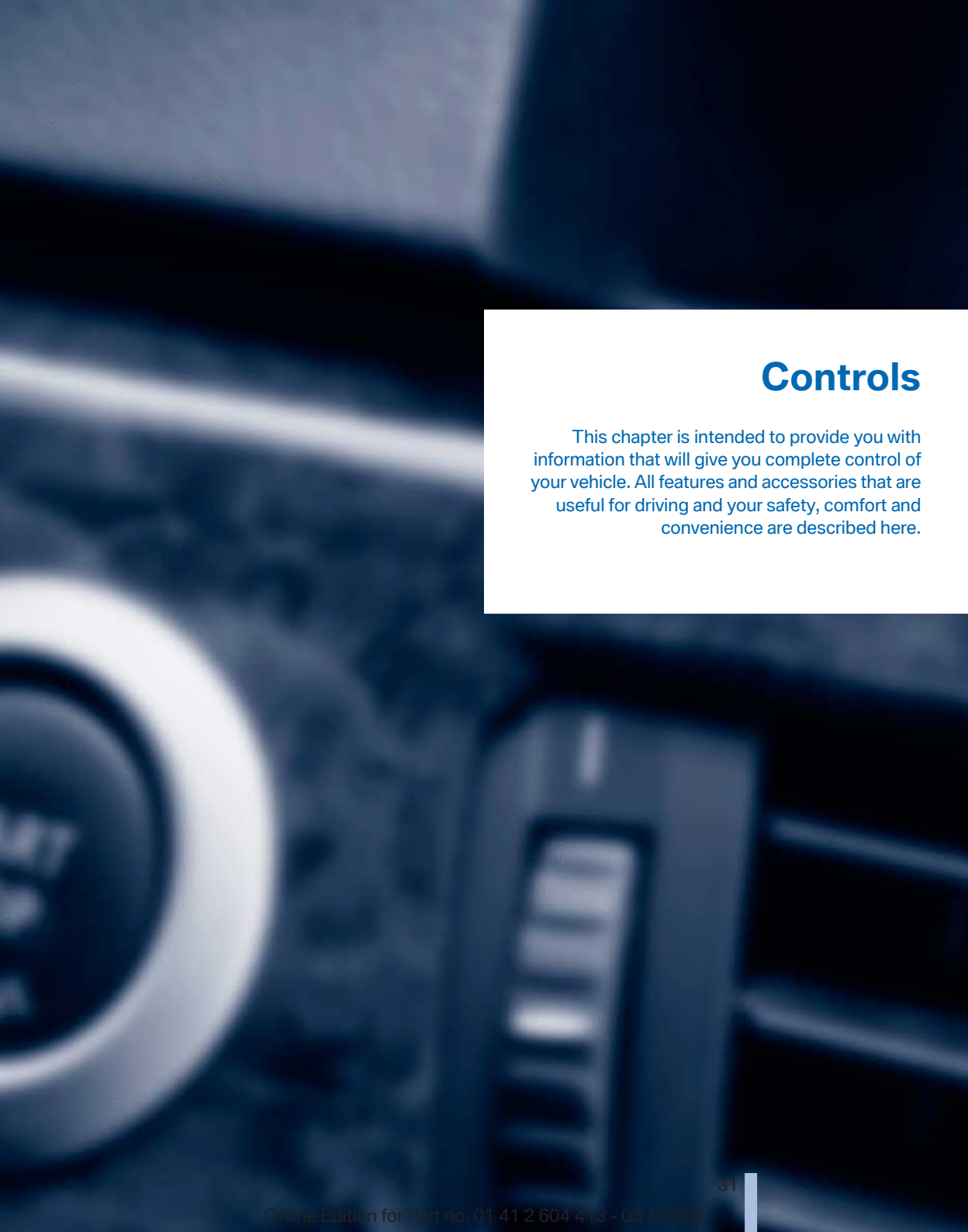
Executing

1 ... 8 Press the button.

The Owner's Manual is displayed immediately.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500



Controls

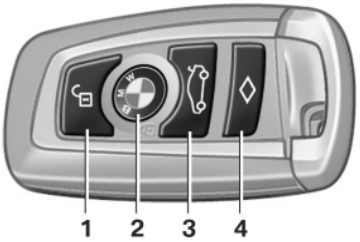
This chapter is intended to provide you with information that will give you complete control of your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience are described here.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Opening and closing

Remote control/key

Buttons on the remote control



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

3 Opening the small tailgate

4 Panic mode*, headlamp courtesy delay feature, opening the large tailgate*

General information

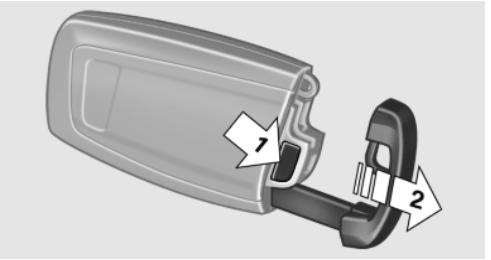
The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with keys.

Every remote control contains a replaceable battery.

The settings called up and implemented when the vehicle is unlocked depend on which remote control is used to unlock the vehicle, Personal Profile, refer to page 33.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, Service data in the remote control, refer to page 238.

Integrated key



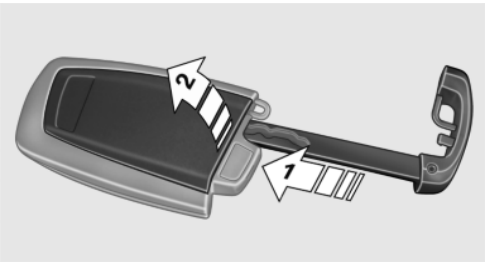
Press the button on the back of the remote control, arrow 1, and pull out the key, arrow 2.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- Driver's door.
- Storage compartment in the front center armrest.

The storage compartment contains a switch for separately securing the tailgate, refer to page 41.

Replacing the battery



1. Take the integrated key out of the remote control.
2. Push in the catch with the key, arrow 1.
3. Remove the cover of the battery compartment; see arrow 2.
4. Insert a battery of the same type with the positive side facing upwards.
5. Press the cover closed.

Take the used battery to a recycling center or to your service center.

New remote controls

You can obtain new remote controls from your service center.

Loss of the remote controls

Lost remote controls can be blocked by your service center.

Emergency detection of remote control

It is possible to switch on the ignition or start the engine in situations such as the following:

- Remote control malfunction.
- Interference of radio transmission to remote control by external sources.
- Discharged battery in the remote control.

A message is displayed on the Control Display if an attempt is made to switch on the ignition or start the engine.

Starting the engine in case of emergency detection of remote control

If a corresponding message appears on the Control Display, as shown, hold the remote control against the marked area on the steering column and press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while depressing the brake.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set several of your vehicle's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences.

- The settings are automatically saved in the profile currently activated.
- The remote control used is detected when the vehicle is unlocked and the stored profile is called up.
- Your personal settings will be recognized and called up again even if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by someone else with another remote control.

The individual settings are stored for up to three remote controls.

Transmitting the settings

Your personal settings can be taken with you to another vehicle equipped with the Personal Profile function. For more information, contact your service center.

Transmission takes place via:

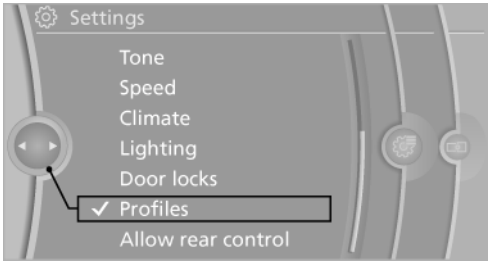
- The USB interface in the glove compartment onto a USB device.

Profile management

Opening the profiles

A different profile can be called up than the one associated with the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"



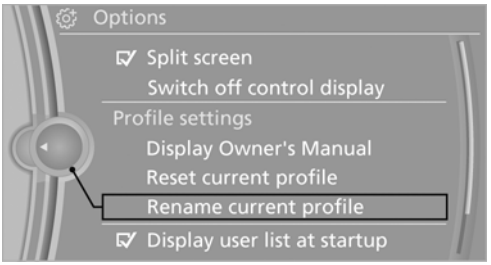
3. Select a profile.

Renaming profiles

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"

   The current profile is selected.
3. Open "Options".

4. "Rename current profile"



Resetting profiles

The settings of the active profile are reset to their default values.

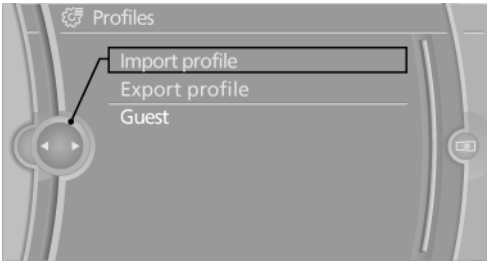
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"

   The current profile is selected.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reset current profile"

Importing profiles

Existing settings and contacts are overwritten with the imported profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Import profile"



4. USB interface, refer to page 140: "USB device"

Exporting profiles

Most settings of the active profile and the saved contacts can be exported.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Export profile"
4. USB interface, refer to page 140: "USB device"

Display profile list during start

The profile list can be displayed during each start for selecting the desired profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Options"
4. "Display user list at startup"

Personal Profile settings

The following functions and settings can be stored in a profile.

More information on the settings can be found under:

- Active Cruise Control: collision warning, refer to page 112.
- Exterior mirror position, refer to page 58.
- CD/Multimedia, refer to page 181: audio source listened to last.
- Dynamic Driving Control: sport program, refer to page 104.
- Driver's seat position, refer to page 48.
- Programmable memory buttons, refer to page 23: assignment.
- Head-up Display, refer to page 126: selection, brightness and position of display.
- Headlamp courtesy delay feature, refer to page 86: time setting.
- Tone, refer to page 172: tone settings.
- Automatic climate control, refer to page 128: settings.
- Steering wheel position, refer to page 60
- Navigation, refer to page 154: map views, route criteria, voice output on/off.
- Night Vision with pedestrian detection, refer to page 123: selection of functions and type of display.

- Daytime running lights*, refer to page 87: current setting.
- Park Distance Control PDC, refer to page 173: adjusting the signal tone volume.
- Radio, refer to page 174: stored stations, station listened to last, special settings.
- Backup camera, refer to page 120: selection of functions and type of display.
- Side View, refer to page 122: selection of the display type.
- Language on the Control Display, refer to page 81.
- Lane departure warning, refer to page 97: last setting, on/off.
- Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 98: last setting, on/off.
- Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 70.
- Locking the vehicle, refer to page 38: after a brief period or after starting to drive.

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system becomes active when the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors.
- Tailgate.
- Fuel filler flap.

Operating from the outside

- Via the remote control.
- Via the driver's door lock.
- Via the door handles*.
- Via the button on the tailgate*.

The following takes place simultaneously when locking/unlocking the vehicle via the remote control:

- Anti-theft protection is switched on/off. Doors cannot be unlocked using the lock buttons or the door opener.
- The welcome lamps, interior lamps and courtesy lamps* are switched on and off.
- The alarm system*, refer to page 42, is armed or disarmed.

Operating from the inside

Via the button for the central locking system.

If the vehicle has been locked from inside, the fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the central locking system unlocks automatically.

The hazard warning system and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: from the outside

Using the remote control

General information

Take the remote control with you

People or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Unlocking

Press the button.

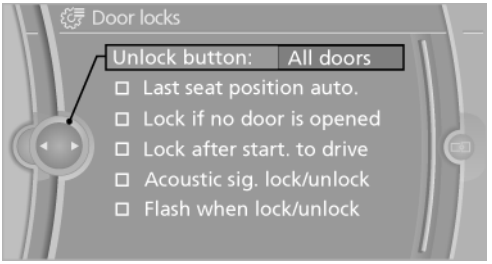
The vehicle is unlocked.

You can set how the vehicle is to be unlocked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Unlock button:"



4. Select the desired function:
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"
     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "All doors"
     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Convenient opening

The remote control can be used to simultaneously open the windows and the glass sunroof*.

Press and hold the button on the remote control.

The windows and the glass sunroof* open.

Releasing the button stops the motion.

Locking

Press the button on the remote control.

Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◄

Switching on the interior lamps, courtesy lamps*, and welcome lamps

Press the button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

Panic mode*

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press the button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching on the headlamp courtesy delay feature

Briefly press the button on the remote control.

The duration, refer to page 86, can be set in the Control Display.

Opening the tailgate

Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The small tailgate opens slightly.

The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens.

Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.

With automatic trunk lid operation*:

Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second and release.

The large tailgate opens automatically.

Note the opening height of the large tailgate

The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the large tailgate opens; otherwise, damage may result.◄

The tailgate opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

To avoid locking yourself out of the vehicle, do not place the remote control into the trunk. The tailgate is locked again as soon as it is pushed closed.

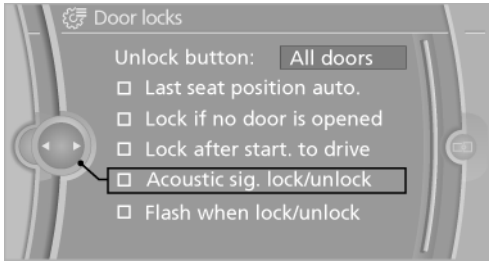
Provide edge protection

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heating wires of the rear window. Provide edge protection.◂

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals.
   - ▷ "Acoustic sig. lock/unlock"
   - ▷ "Flash when lock/unlock"



Malfunction

Local radio waves may interfere with the remote control.

If the vehicle can no longer be locked or unlocked with the remote control, the battery is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 32.

If this occurs, unlock or lock the vehicle at the door lock using the key.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- ▷ LX8766S.
- ▷ LX8766E.
- ▷ LX8CAS.
- ▷ LX8CAS2.
- ▷ MYTCAS4.

Compliance statement:

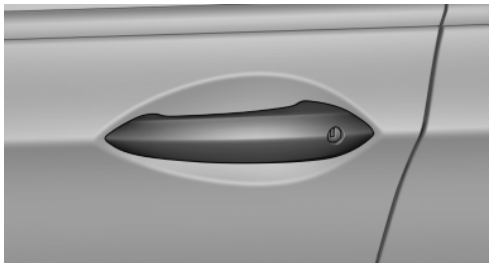
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- ▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- ▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Using the door lock

General information



Locking from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◂

Remove the key before pulling the door handle

Before pulling the outside door handle, remove the key to avoid damaging the paintwork and the key.◂

In some country-specific versions, the alarm system*, refer to page 42, is triggered if the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.

Unlock the vehicle using the remote control to switch off the alarm.

Convenient operation*

The door lock can be used to simultaneously operate the windows and the glass sunroof*.

Opening/closing

With the door closed, turn the key to the Unlock or Lock position and hold it there.

Turning the key back to the original position stops the motion.

Monitor the closing process

Monitor the closing process to ensure that no one becomes trapped; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Manual operation

If an electrical malfunction occurs, lock or unlock the vehicle using a key via the door lock on the driver's door.

Opening and closing: from the inside

Locking and unlocking

Press the button in the vehicle.

The doors and the tailgate are locked or unlocked when the front doors are closed, but they are not secured against theft.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

You can set how the vehicle should be unlocked; refer to Unlocking, refer to page 35.

Automatic locking

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

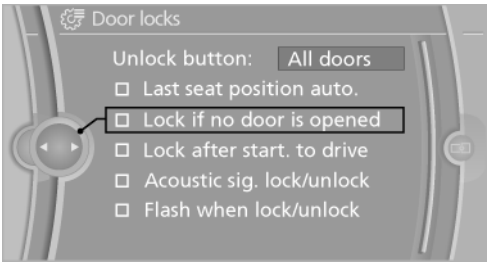
1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Select the desired function:

▷ "Lock if no door is opened"

The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if a door is not opened.

▷ "Lock after start. to drive"

The vehicle locks automatically after you drive away.



Doors

Automatic Soft Closing

To close the doors, push lightly.

It is closed automatically.

Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the doors is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Tailgate

Opening

Opening the small tailgate

The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens.

Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.

- ▷ Press the button on the tailgate, arrow 1.
- ▷ Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.
- ▷ Push the button in the driver's footwell.

The tailgate is opened if the vehicle is stationary, provided that the tailgate has not been locked.

Provide edge protection

Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heating wires of the rear window. Provide edge protection.◄

Opening the large tailgate

Note the opening height of the large tailgate

The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the large tailgate opens; otherwise, damage may result.◄

Press the button on the tailgate, arrow 2, and open the tailgate.

Provide edge protection

Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window while driving and damage the heating wires of the rear window. Provide edge protection.◄

Closing

Recessed grips on the inside trim of the tailgate can be used to conveniently pull down the tailgate.

Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Automatic Soft Closing

To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only.

It is closed automatically.

Locking the vehicle*

Press the button on the open tailgate.

The vehicle is locked completely.

Automatic trunk lid operation*

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the large tailgate should open.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Adjusting the opening height

When setting the opening height, ensure that there is a clearance of at least 4 in/10 cm above the tailgate. Otherwise, the ceiling may not be high enough for the open tailgate if the load situation changes.◄

1. "Settings"
2. "Tailgate"
3. Turn the controller until the desired opening height is selected.

Opening the large tailgate

Note the opening height of the large tailgate

The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the large tailgate opens; otherwise, damage may result.

Adjust the opening height of the large tailgate according to the given situation.◄

The large tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

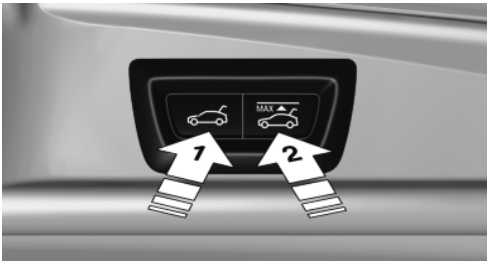
- ▷ Press the button on the exterior of the tailgate, arrow 2.
- ▷ Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second and release.

Pressing the button again stops the motion.

The opening process is interrupted as well:

- ▷ When the vehicle starts moving.
- ▷ By pressing the button in the driver's footwell.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate.

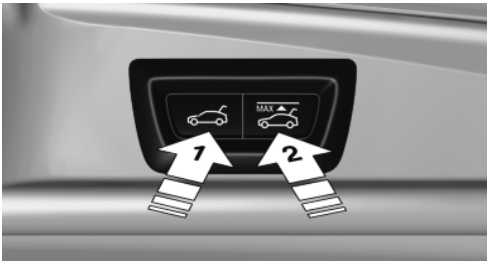
Opening the large tailgate further



Press and hold the button on the inside of the large tailgate, arrow 2, to open the large tailgate to the maximum opening height.

Releasing the button stops the motion.

Closing the large tailgate



- ▷ Press the button, arrow 1, on the inside of the large tailgate.

  The tailgate closes automatically.

  Pressing again stops the motion.

▷ With Comfort Access:

Press the button on the open tailgate.

Tailgate closes automatically and the vehicle is locked.

▷ Press the button on the exterior of the tailgate, arrow 2.

Pressing again stops the motion.

The closing process is not interrupted when the vehicle starts moving.

Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◀

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

Locking separately

The tailgate can be locked separately, using the switch in the front center armrest.

▷ The tailgate is locked, arrow 1.

The small and large tailgates are locked.

▷ The tailgate is unlocked, arrow 2.

Slide the switch into the arrow 1 position. This secures the tailgate and disconnects it from the central locking system.

When the center armrest is locked, the tailgate cannot be accessed. This is beneficial when the vehicle is parked using valet service. The infrared remote control can be handed out without the key.

Emergency unlocking*

Pull the handle inside the trunk.

The tailgate is unlocked.

Comfort Access*

The concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, e.g., in your jacket pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is nearby or in the passenger compartment.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

▷ Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.

▷ Unlocking of the tailgate separately.

▷ Starting the engine.

Functional requirements

▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle.

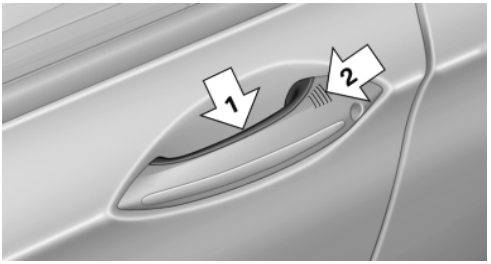
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- The engine can only be started if the remote control is inside the vehicle.

Comparison with ordinary remote control

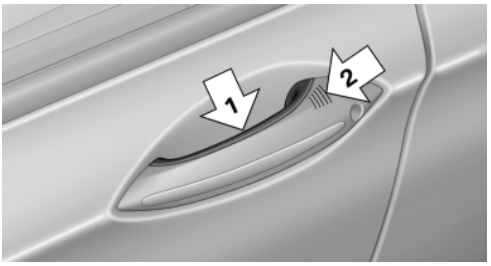
The functions can be controlled by pressing the buttons or via Comfort Access.

Unlocking



Fully grasp a door handle, arrow 1. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Locking



Press the area on the door handle, arrow 2, with your finger for approx. 1 second.

This corresponds to pressing the button.

To save battery power, ensure that the ignition and all electronic systems and/or power consumers are switched off before locking the vehicle.

Unlocking the tailgate separately

Press the middle button on the exterior of the tailgate, refer to page 38, to open the small tailgate.

This corresponds to pressing the button.

Press the right-hand button on the exterior of the tailgate to open the large tailgate.

This corresponds to pressing the button.

Ignition on

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on.

When doing so, do not depress the brake pedal; otherwise, the engine will start.

Malfunction

Comfort Access may not function properly if it experiences interference from local radio waves, e.g., mobile phones.

If this occurs, open or close the vehicle using the buttons on the remote control or use a key in the door lock.

To subsequently start the engine, hold the remote control against the marked area on the steering column, refer to page 33.

Alarm system*

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds to:

- Opening of a door, the hood or the tailgate.
- Movements in the vehicle: interior motion sensor, refer to page 43.
- Changes in the vehicle tilt, e.g., during attempts to steal a wheel or tow the car.
- Interruptions in battery voltage.

The alarm system briefly indicates tampering:

- By sounding an acoustic alarm.
- By switching on the hazard warning system.
- By flashing the high beams.

Arming and disarming the alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

Door lock and armed alarm system

Unlocking via the door lock will trigger the alarm on some country-specific versions.

This alarm can only be ended by pressing the button on the remote control.

Tailgate and armed alarm system

The tailgate can be opened using the remote control, even if the alarm system is armed.

- Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

  The small tailgate opens slightly.
- With automatic trunk lid operation*:

  Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second and release.

  The large tailgate opens automatically.

Note the opening height of the large tailgate

The tailgate pivots back and up when it opens. Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the large tailgate opens; otherwise, damage may result.◄

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again by the alarm system. The hazard warning system flashes once.

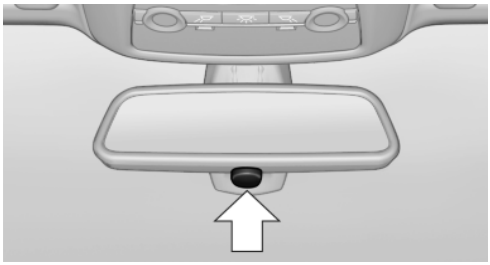
Panic mode*

Press the button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle using the remote control.
- Unlock the vehicle via the driver's door lock using the key*.
- With Comfort Access: If you are carrying the remote control with you, pull on the door handle.

Indicator lamp on the interior rearview mirror



- The indicator lamp flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The system is armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after locking:

  The doors, hood or tailgate is not closed properly, but the rest of the vehicle is secured.

  After 10 seconds, the indicator lamp flashes continuously. The interior motion sensor is not active.
- The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the engine is started, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or tow the car.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off together, such as in the following situations:

- In duplex garages.
- During transport on car-carrying trains, at sea or on a trailer.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

▷ When animals are to remain in the vehicle.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the remote control twice in succession.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then flashes continuously.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Power windows

General information

Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot operate the power windows and injure themselves.◄

Opening

▷ Press the switch to the resistance point.

The window opens while the switch is held.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window opens automatically.

Pressing again stops the motion.

Closing

Danger of pinching

Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point.

The window closes while the switch is held.

▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window closes automatically.

Pressing the switch stops the motion.

Convenience operation, refer to page 36, via the remote control or the door lock.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted.

The window reopens slightly.

Danger of pinching even with pinch protection

Even with the pinch protection system, check that the window's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not stop in certain situations, e.g., if thin objects are present.◄

Window accessories

Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows; otherwise, the pinch protection system will be impaired.◄

Closing without the pinch protection system

For example, if there is an external danger or if ice on the windows prevents a window from closing normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   Pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without pinch protection.

Safety switch

The following functions can be locked simultaneously, using the switch:

- Opening and closing of the rear windows using the switches in the rear.
- Operation of the roller sunblinds* using the switches in the rear.
- Adjustment of the power rear seats*.
- Adjustment of the power head restraints* in the rear.

Switching on and off

Press the button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Safety switch for rear operation

Press the safety switch when transporting children in the rear; otherwise, injury may result if the windows are closed without supervision.◄

To deactivate the function, the vehicle must be in at least the radio ready state.

Roller sunblinds*

General information

The safety switch in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, for example, from operating the roller blinds using the switches in the rear.

Press the safety switch in the driver's door. The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

If you are no longer able to move the roller blinds after having activated them consecutively a number of times, the system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Let the system cool.

The roller sunblinds cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

Driver's door controls

Roller blinds for rear side windows

Press the button.

Rear door controls

Roller blind for the side windows

Press the button.

The roller blind can only be extended or retracted when the side window is closed.

Raising and lowering the roller blinds together

Press the button.

Panoramic glass sunroof*

General information

The glass sunroof and the sliding visor can be operated together or separately, using the same switch.

The glass sunroof is operational when the ignition is switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Danger of pinching

Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot operate the roof and injure themselves.◄

Raising the glass sunroof

Press the switch briefly.

- ▷ The closed roof is raised and the sliding visor opens slightly.
- ▷ The opened roof closes until it is in its raised position. The sliding visor stays completely open.

  Pressing the switch again closes the sliding visor almost completely.

Sliding visor with raised roof

Do not use force to close the sliding visor, as this may damage the mechanism.◄

Opening/closing the sliding visor

- ▷ Press the switch in the desired direction to the resistance point and hold it there.

  The sliding visor moves while the switch is being held.
- ▷ Press the switch in the desired direction past the resistance point.

  The sliding visor moves automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof

When the sliding visor is open, proceed as described under Sliding visor.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sliding visor together

Press the switch twice in the desired direction past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sliding visor move together. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Convenience operation, refer to page 36, via the remote control or the door lock.

Comfort position

In the comfort position, the roof is not fully open. This reduces wind noise in the passenger compartment.

Every time the glass sunroof is opened or closed completely, it stops in the comfort position. If desired, continue the movement by pressing the switch.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force when closing the glass sunroof exceeds a certain value, the closing movement is stopped, beginning at approximately the middle of the opening in the roof, or from the raised position during closing.

The glass sunroof opens again slightly.

Danger of pinching even with pinch protection

Despite the pinch protection system, check that the roof's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not be interrupted in certain extreme situations, such as when thin objects are present.◄

Closing without the pinch protection system

For example, if there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold.

   Pinch protection is limited and the roof reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Press the switch forward again beyond the resistance point and hold until the roof closes without pinch protection.

Initializing after a power failure

After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the roof to a limited extent.

Have the system initialized by your service center.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Adjusting

Sitting safely

The ideal seating position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

The seating position plays an important role in an accident in combination with:

- ▷ Safety belts, refer to page 53.
- ▷ Head restraints, refer to page 55.
- ▷ Airbags, refer to page 90.

Front seats

Adjusting

Do not adjust the seat while driving

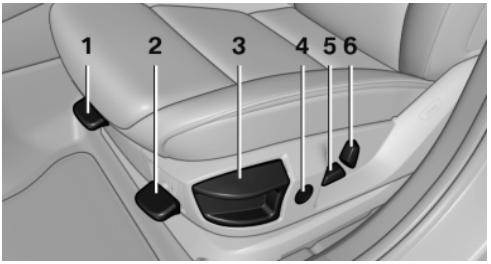
Never attempt to adjust the driver's seat while driving.

The seat could respond with unexpected movement and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.◂

Do not incline the backrest too far to the rear

Do not incline the backrest on the front passenger side too far to the rear during driving. Otherwise, there is the danger of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. This would eliminate the protection normally provided by the belt.◂

At a glance: partially powered seats



1 Thigh support*

2 Tilt

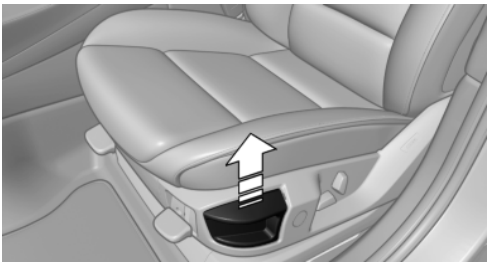
3 Forward/backward

4 Lumbar support*

5 Height

6 Backrest

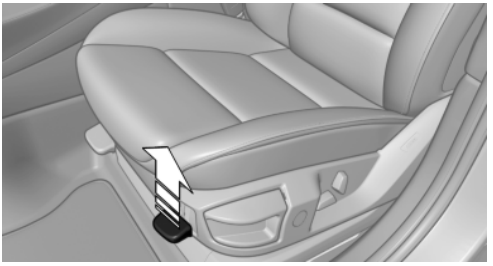
Adjustments in detail: partially powered seats



Forward/back:

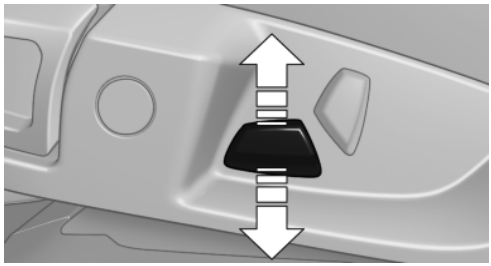
Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly to make sure it engages properly.



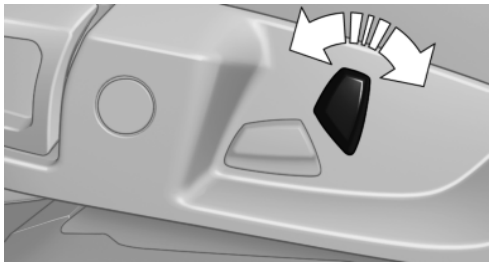
Seat tilt:

Pull the lever and move the seat to the desired tilt. After releasing the lever, apply your weight to the seat or lift it off to make sure the seat engages properly.



Height:

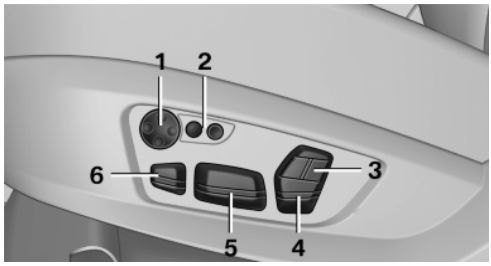
Move the button in the required direction.



Backrest tilt:

Move the button in the required direction.

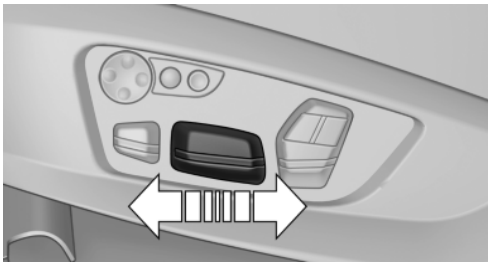
At a glance: power* seats



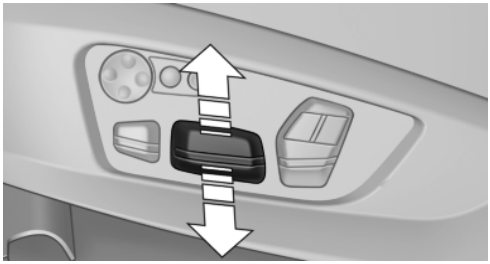
1 Lumbar support*
2 Backrest width*
3 Shoulder support*
4 Backrest
5 Forward/back, height, tilt
6 Thigh support*

Adjustments in detail: power* seats

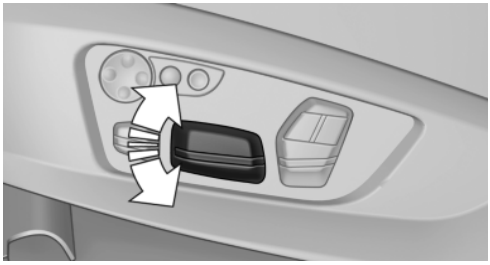
1. Forward/back.



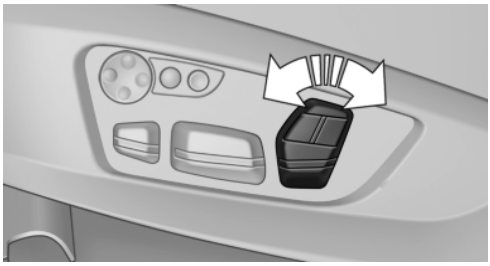
2. Height.



3. Seat tilt.

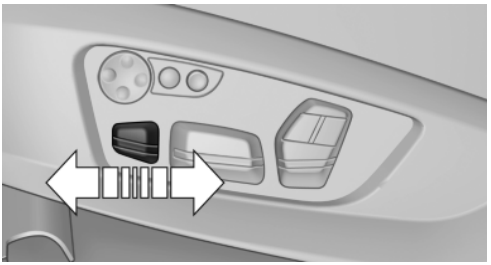


4. Backrest tilt.



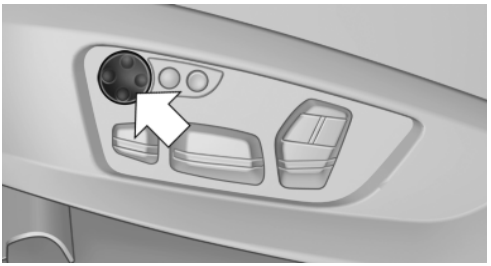
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

5. Thigh support*.



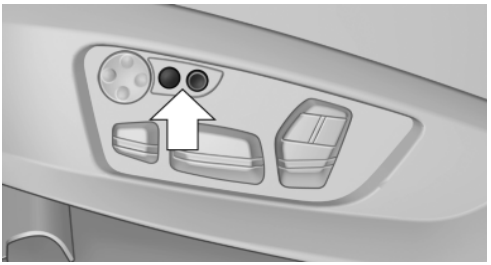
Lumbar support*

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in such a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.



- ▷ Press the front/rear section of the switch.
  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the upper/lower section of the switch.
  The curvature is shifted up/down.

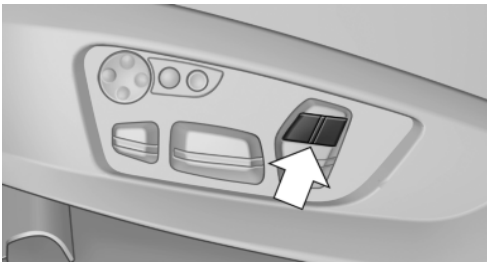
Backrest width*



Change the width of the backrest using the side wings to adjust the lateral support.

To make it easier to enter and exit the vehicle, the backrest width temporarily opens fully.

Shoulder support*



Also supports the back in the shoulder area:

- ▷ Results in a relaxed seating position.
- ▷ Reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

Active seat*

Active adjustment of the seat cushion's contours reduces muscular tension and fatigue to help prevent lower back pain.

Press the button. The LED lights up.

Seat heating*

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Switching off

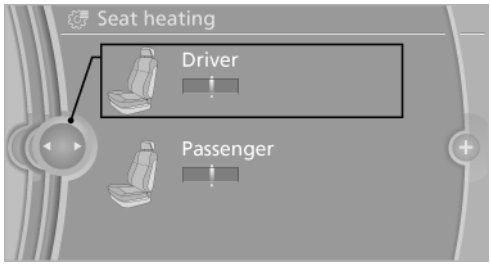
Press the button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Temperature distribution*

The heating action in the seat cushion and backrest can be distributed in different ways.

1. "Climate"
2. "Seat heating distribution"
3. Select the required seat.



4. Turn the controller to set the temperature distribution.

Active seat ventilation*

The seat surface is cooled by means of the integrated fan.

The ventilation rapidly cools the seat, e.g., if the vehicle interior is overheated or for continuous cooling at high temperatures.

Switching on

Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The highest level is active when three LEDs are lit.

After a short time, the system automatically moves down one level in order to prevent excessive cooling.

Switching off

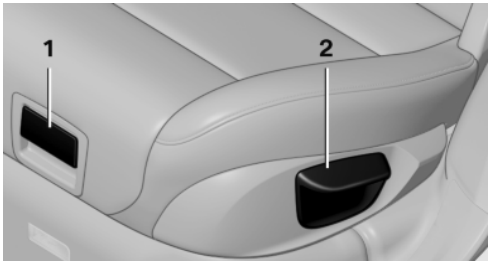
Press the button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Rear seats

Adjusting

At a glance: manually adjustable seats



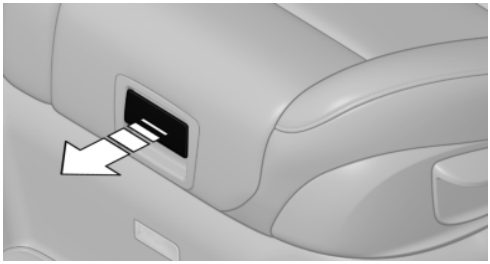
1 Forward/backward

2 Backrest

Adjustments in detail: manually adjustable seats

Do not adjust the seat while driving

Never attempt to adjust the seat while driving. Otherwise, the restraining effect of the seat can be limited in an accident.◂

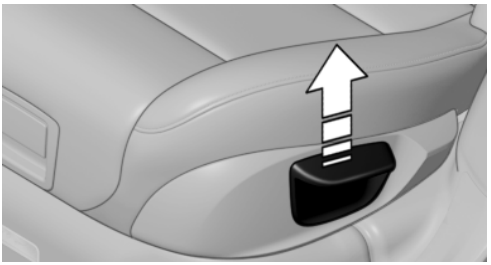


Forward/back:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

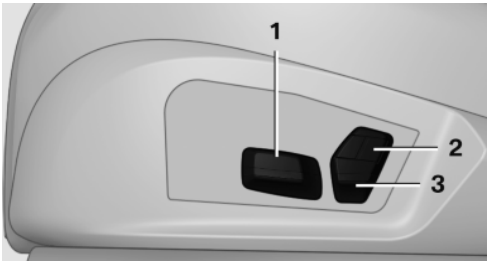
After releasing the level, move the seat forward or back slightly until it engages.



Backrest tilt:

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off.

At a glance: power* seats



1 Forward/backward

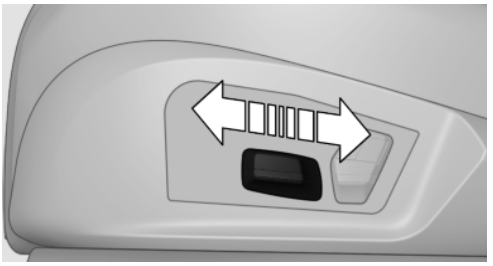
2 Shoulder support

3 Backrest, head restraint

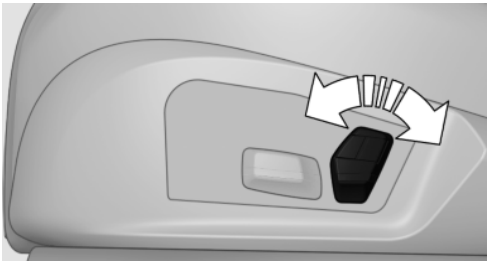
The seats cannot be adjusted if the safety switch for the power windows has been pressed.

Adjustments in detail: power* seats

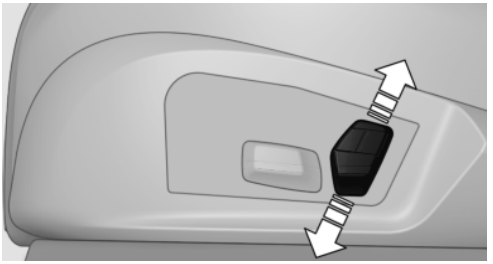
1. Forward/back.



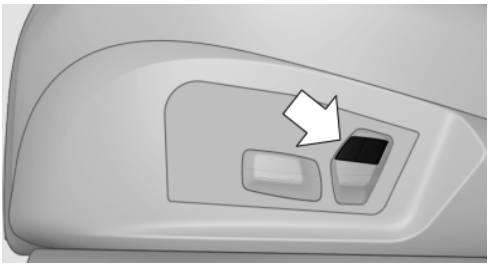
2. Backrest tilt.



3. Head restraint.



Shoulder support*



Also supports the back in the shoulder area:

▷ Results in a relaxed seating position.

▷ Reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

Reset* to standard position

Maintain pressure on the button until the system completes the adjustment.

Seat heating*

Switching on

Press the button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Switching off

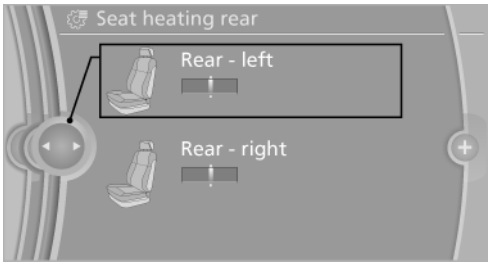
Press the button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Temperature distribution

The heating action in the seat cushion and backrest can be distributed in different ways.

1. "Climate"
2. "Seat heating rear"
3. Select the required seat.



4. Turn the controller to set the temperature distribution.

Active seat ventilation*

Switching on

Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The highest level is active when three LEDs are lit.

Switching off

Press the button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Safety belts

General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving away.

Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Seats with safety belt

The vehicle has four or five* seating positions, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

- The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.
- The two rear safety belt buckles, integrated into the rear seat, are for passengers sitting on the left and right.
- The belt buckle embossed with the word CENTER is intended exclusively for use by passengers riding in the center position.

One person per safety belt

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride on a passenger's lap.◄

Putting on the belt

Lay the belt, without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. Otherwise, the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen.

The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects, or be pinched.◄

Reduction of restraining effect

Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly, and pull the shoulder belt periodically to readjust the tension across your lap; otherwise, the retention effect of the safety belt may be reduced.◄

Buckling the belt

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Unbuckling the belt

1. Hold the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt back into its reel.

Safety belt reminder for driver's and front passenger seat

The indicator lamp flashes or lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Damage to safety belts

In the case of strain caused by accidents or damage:

Have the safety belts, including the safety belt tensioners, replaced and have the belt anchors checked.

Checking and replacing safety belts

Have the work performed only by your service center; otherwise, it cannot be ensured that this safety feature will function properly.◄

Front head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Adjusting the head restraint

Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◀

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Active head restraint

In the event of a rear-end collision with a certain severity, the active head restraint automatically reduces the distance from the head.

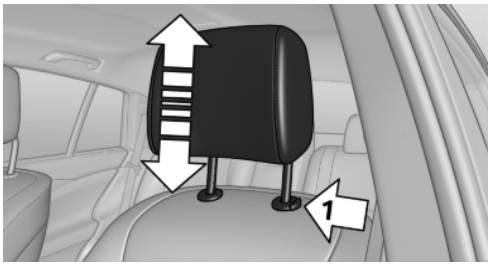
Reduced protective function

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.

- ▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, on the head restraints.
- ▷ Do not attach accessories to the seat or head restraint.

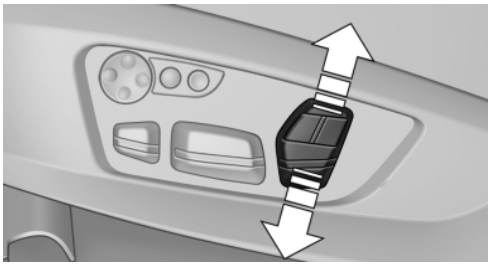
Otherwise, the protective function of the active head restraint will be impaired and the personal safety of the occupants will be endangered.◀

Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



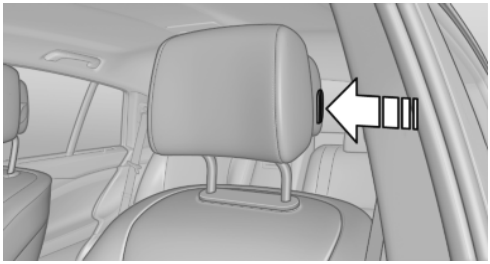
- ▷ To raise: pull.
- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

Adjusting the height: power* head restraints



Adjusting electrically.

Distance to the back of the head: manual head restraints



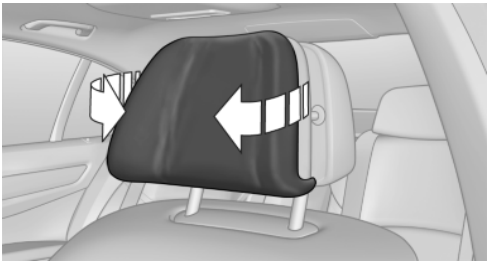
- ▷ Forward: pull.
- ▷ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Distance to the back of the head: power* head restraints

The head restraint is automatically repositioned when the shoulder support is adjusted, refer to page 50.

Adjusting the side extensions*



Fold forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Adjusting the head restraint

Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◄

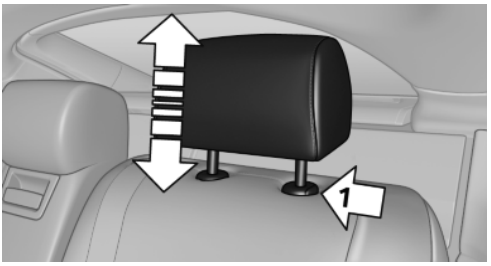
Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Distance

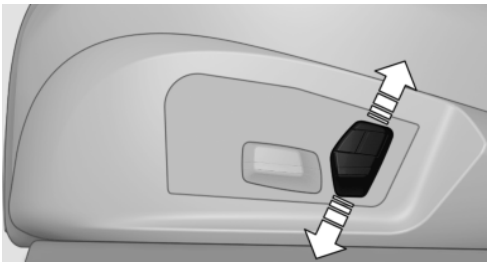
Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



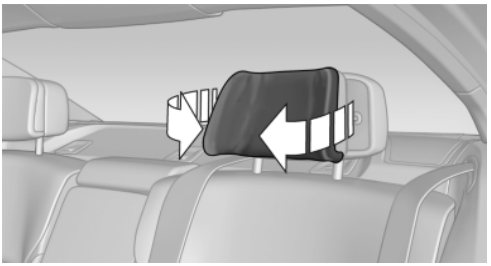
- To raise: pull.
- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

Adjusting the height: power* head restraints



Move the switch in the desired direction.

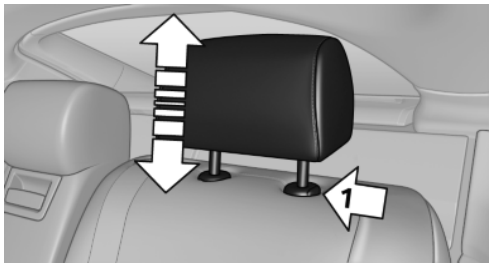
Adjusting* the side sections



Fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

Removing: manual head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Pull the head restraint upward as far as possible.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Before transporting passengers

Reinstall the head restraint before transporting anyone in the seat; otherwise, the protective function of the head restraint is unavailable.◄

Removing: power* head restraints

For technical reasons, the head restraint cannot be removed.

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory*

General information

Front

Two different driver's seat, exterior mirror, and steering wheel positions can be stored and retrieved for each remote control. The adjustment of the lumbar support is not stored.

Rear

Two different seat positions can be stored and retrieved.

Storing

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Set the desired position.
3. M Press the button on the door. The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired button 1 or 2. The LED goes out.

If the M button is pressed accidentally:

M Press the button on the door again. The LED goes out.

Calling up settings

Do not retrieve the memory while driving

Do not retrieve the memory setting while driving, as an unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel could result in an accident.◄

Comfort function

1. Open the driver's door.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Briefly press the desired button 1 or 2.

The corresponding seat position is performed automatically.

The procedure stops when a switch for adjusting the seat or one of the buttons is pressed.

Safety mode

1. Close the driver's door or switch on the ignition.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

2. Press and hold the desired button 1 or 2 until the adjustment procedure is completed.

Calling up of a seat position deactivated

After a brief period, the calling up of stored seat positions is deactivated to save battery power.

To reactivate calling up of a seat position:

- ▷ Open or close the door or tailgate.
- ▷ Press a button on the remote control.
- ▷ Press the Start/Stop button.

Calling up with the remote control

The driver's seat, exterior mirror, and steering wheel position selected last is stored for the currently used remote control.

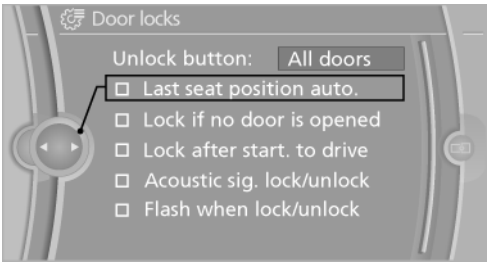
Pinch hazard when moving back the seat

If this function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty. Otherwise, people can be injured or objects damaged when the seat is moved back.◄

The adjustment procedure is interrupted:

- ▷ When a seat position switch is pressed.
- ▷ When a memory button is touched.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Last seat position auto."



Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

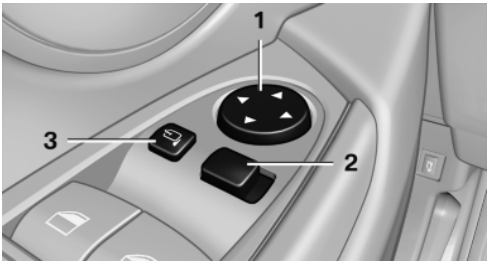
General information

The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's mirror.

Estimating distances correctly

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the traffic behind you based on what you see in the mirror, as this will increase your risk of an accident.◄

At a glance



1 Adjusting

2 Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor*

3 Fold in and out*

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the mirror changeover switch.

Adjusting electrically

The setting corresponds to the direction in which the button is pressed.

Saving positions*

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory, refer to page 57.

Adjusting manually

If an electrical malfunction occurs, for example, press the edges of the mirror glass.

Automatic Curb Monitor*

When the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass tilts downward slightly on the front passenger side. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for example.

Activating

1. Slide the mirror changeover switch to the driver's mirror position.
2. Engage transmission position R.

Deactivating

Slide the mirror changeover switch to the passenger's mirror position.

Fold in and out

Press the button.

Possible up to approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

For example, this is advantageous

- In car washes.
- In narrow streets.
- For folding back mirrors that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Fold in the mirror in a car wash

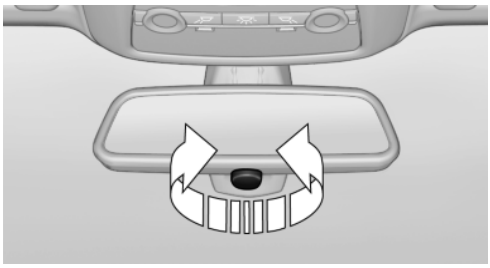
Before entering an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors by hand or with the button; otherwise, they could be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.◄

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

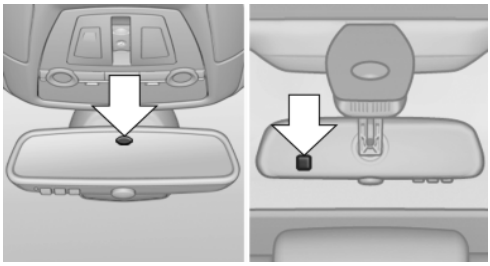
Interior rearview mirror

Reducing the blinding effect



From behind when driving at night: turn the knob.

Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature*



Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

For proper operation:

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

Steering wheel

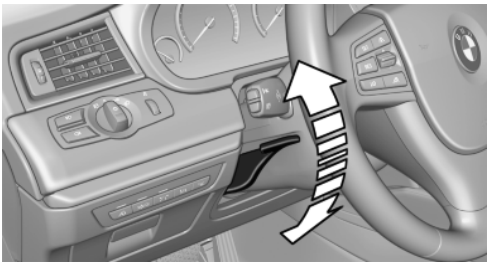
General information

Adjusting while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving; otherwise, an unexpected movement could result in an accident.◄

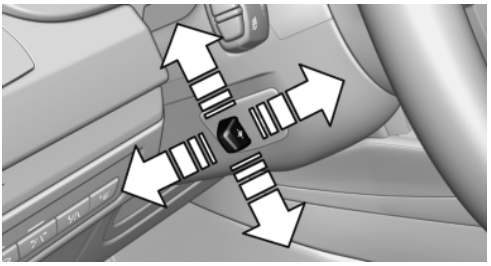
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
3. Fold the lever back.

Power* steering wheel adjustment



The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing the position

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory, refer to page 57.

Steering wheel heating*

Switching on/off

Press the button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Note

Children in the vehicle

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g., by opening the doors.◄

Children should always be in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the back seat.

Transporting children in the rear

Only transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm in the rear in child restraint fixing systems provided in accordance with the age, weight and size of the child; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint fixing system can no longer be used, due to their age, weight and size.◄

Children on the front passenger seat

Should it ever be necessary to use a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 91.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags

If a child restraint fixing system is used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbags must be deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint fixing system.◄

Installing child restraint fixing systems

Before mounting

Before mounting a child restraint fixing system on the rear middle seat, return both outer backrests to the basic position.

Notes

Manufacturer's information for child restraint fixing systems

To select, mount and use child restraint fixing systems, observe the information provided by the system manufacturer; otherwise, the protective effect can be impaired.◄

In the front passenger seat

After installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags

If a child restraint fixing system is used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbags must be deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint fixing system.◄

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint fixing system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the middle position to obtain the best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

Do not change the seat position and height after this.

Backrest width*

Before installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest

width, refer to page 50, completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Backrest width for the child seat

Before installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, the backrest width must be opened completely. Do not change the adjustment after this; otherwise, the stability of the child seat will be reduced.◄

Child seat security

The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be locked against pulling out for mounting the child restraint fixing systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
2. Secure the child restraint fixing system with the belt.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in and pull it taut against the child restraint fixing system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint fixing system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren.

Note

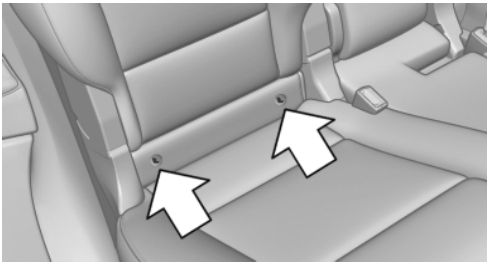
Manufacturer's information for LATCH child restraint fixing systems

To mount and use the LATCH child restraint fixing systems, observe the operating and safety information from the system manufacturer; otherwise, the level of protection may be reduced.◄

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

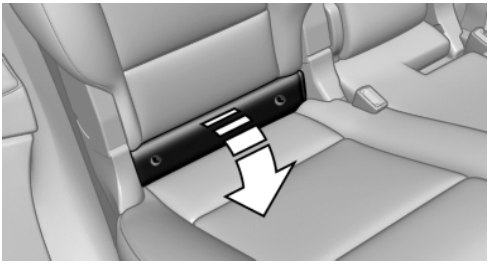
Correctly engage the lower LATCH anchors

Make sure that the lower LATCH anchors have properly engaged and that the child restraint fixing system is resting snugly against the backrest; otherwise, the degree of protection offered may be reduced.◄



Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located behind the seat cover between the backrest and the seat cushion at the marked locations.

Exposing the lower LATCH anchors



1. Reach between the seat cushion and the backrest.
2. Detach the seat cover from the Velcro® fastener.

3. Pull the seat cover forward.

Before mounting the LATCH child restraint fixing system, pull the belt away from the child restraint fixing system.

Mounting LATCH child restraint fixing systems without power rear seats

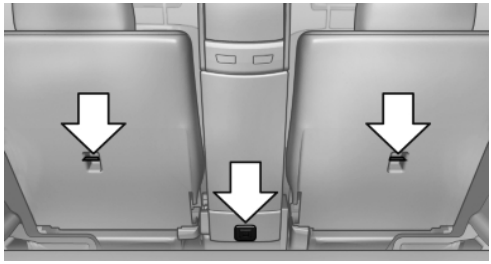
1. Move the seat to its rearmost position.
2. For better accessibility, tilt the backrest back slightly.
3. Fold the leather cover on the seat forward.
4. Mount the child restraint fixing system; refer to the operating instructions of the system.
5. Make sure that both lower LATCH anchors have properly engaged and that the child restraint fixing system is resting snugly against the backrest.
6. After mounting the system, move the backrest back up slightly so that the child restraint fixing system rests against the backrest.

Mounting LATCH child restraint fixing systems on power rear seats*

1. Before mounting, adjust the seats to their basic position, refer to page 53.
2. Mount the child restraint fixing system; refer to the operating instructions of the system.
3. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

Child restraint fixing systems with a tether strap

Mounting points



Depending on the vehicle equipment, there are two outer or three mounting points for child restraint fixing systems with a tether strap.

Fold up the middle mounting point.

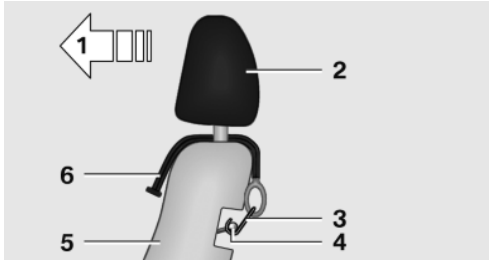
LATCH mounting eyes

Only use the mounting eyes for the upper LATCH retaining strap to secure child restraint fixing systems; otherwise, the mounting eyes could be damaged.◀

Retaining strap guide

Retaining strap

Make sure the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes to the top anchor. Otherwise, the strap will not properly secure the child restraint fixing system in the event of an accident.◀



1 Direction of travel

2 Head restraint.

3 Hook for upper retaining strap

4 Mounting point/eye

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

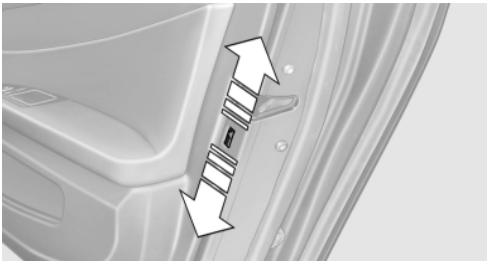
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise the head restraint.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
3. Attach the hooks of the retaining strap to the mounting eyes.
4. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
5. Lower the head restraint.

Locking the doors and windows

Rear doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors down.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press the button on the driver's door if children are being transported in the rear.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear: safety switch, refer to page 45.

Driving

Start/Stop button

The concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

The engine starts if the brake pedal is pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Ignition on

Press the Start/Stop button and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster light up for varying lengths of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

The ignition switches off automatically:

- During locking when the low beams are switched on.
- Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.
- When the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically switches to radio ready state when the door is opened, if the light is switched off or the daytime running lights are switched on.

Ignition off

Press the Start/Stop button again and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All indicator lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Transmission position P with the ignition off

When the ignition is switched off, position P is engaged automatically. When in an automatic car wash, for example, ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally.◄

When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system, the ignition switches off automatically.

Radio ready state

This state can only be reached by pressing the Start/Stop button briefly to switch off the engine while it is running.

Some electronic systems/power consumers remain ready for operation.

Radio ready state switches off automatically:

- After approx. 8 minutes.
- When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.

Starting the engine

General information

Enclosed areas

Do not let the engine run in enclosed areas; otherwise, breathing of exhaust fumes may lead to loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas.◄

Unattended vehicle

Do not leave the car unattended with the engine running; otherwise, it presents a potential source of danger.

Before leaving the car with the engine running, set the parking brake and place the transmission in position P or neutral to prevent the car from moving.◄

Frequent starting in quick succession

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Avoid repeated futile attempts at starting the car and avoid starting the car frequently in quick succession. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned, and there is the danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◄

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds.

Starting the engine

Press on the brake pedal and press the Start/Stop button.

The engine is cranked until it starts.

Engine stop

General information

Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot operate the windows and injure themselves.◄

Set the parking brake and further secure the vehicle as required

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the vehicle, for example, by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb. ◄

Switching off the engine

1. Engage transmission position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio ready state is switched on.
3. Set the parking brake.

Before driving into a car wash

The vehicle is able to roll when the following steps are adhered to:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Engage transmission position N.
3. Release the parking brake or deactivate Automatic Hold, refer to page 68.
4. Switch the engine off.

Transmission position P with the ignition off

When the ignition is switched off, position P is engaged automatically. When in an automatic car wash, for example, ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally.◄

Transmission position P is engaged automatically:

- When the ignition is switched off.
- After approx. 15 minutes if the vehicle is not moved.

Parking brake

The concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

- Engine switched off: the parking brake acts on the rear wheels.
- Engine running: the parking brake acts on the disc brakes of the front and rear wheels via the hydraulic brake system.

The parking brake can be set manually or automatically:

- Manual: by pulling and pushing the switch.
- Automatic: by activating Automatic Hold, refer to page 68.

Setting

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

PARK The indicator lamp lights up in red. The parking brake is set.

Indicator lamp in Canadian models

While driving

Use while driving:

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the button is being pulled.

PARK The indicator lamp lights up in red, a signal sounds and the brake lamps light up.

Indicator lamp in Canadian models

If the vehicle is braked to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h, the parking brake remains set.

Releasing

Press the switch while the brake pedal is pressed or transmission position P is engaged.

The LED and indicator lamp go out.

The parking brake is released.

Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot release the parking brake.◄

Manual release

The parking brake can be released manually in the event of a power failure or electrical fault.

Before releasing, secure the vehicle against rolling

Before releasing the parking brake manually, and whenever you park the vehicle with the parking brake released, ensure that position P of the automatic transmission is engaged.

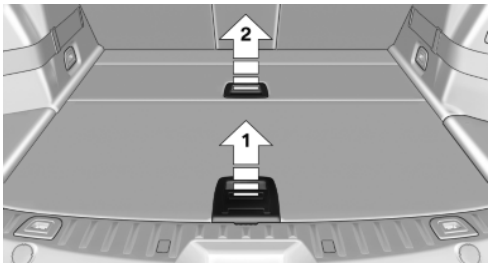
Secure the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the inclination of the road, e.g., with a wheel chock; otherwise, there is the danger of the vehicle rolling.◄

If it also becomes necessary to release the transmission lock of the automatic transmission manually, follow this sequence:

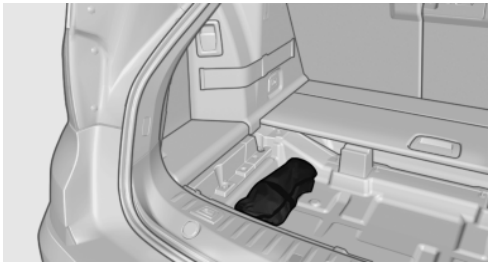
1. Secure the vehicle against rolling.
2. Manually release the parking brake.

Unlocking

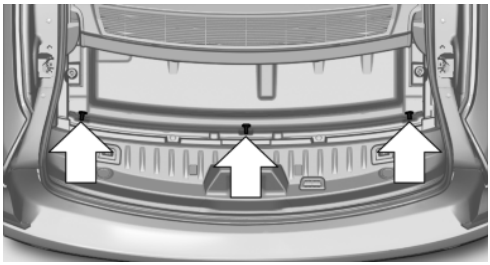
1. Raise the rear floor cover in the trunk, arrow 1, and fasten it with a retaining strap.



2. Remove the release tool from the tool kit.

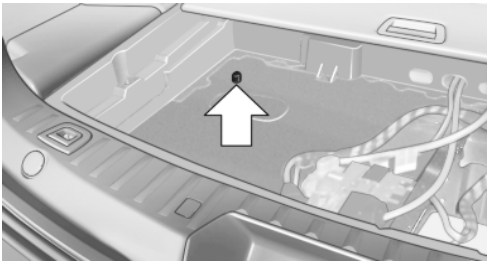


3. Take out the floor trim in the trunk, removing the clips with a screw driver, arrows.

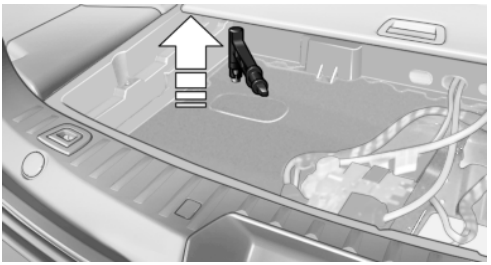


Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

4. Hook the release tool into the release point, arrow.



5. Forcefully pull the release tool up against the resistance until you notice a marked increase in the resistance and the parking brake releases audibly.



Have the malfunction corrected

If the parking brake has been released manually in response to a malfunction, only technicians can return it to operation.

Have the malfunction corrected by your service center.◄

After a power failure

Only put the parking brake into operation after a power failure

The parking brake should only be put into operation again if it was manually released due to an interruption in the supply of electrical power. Otherwise, it cannot be ensured that the parking brake will function properly.◄

Putting the parking brake into operation

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. (P) Press the switch with the brake depressed or transmission position P engaged.

It may take several seconds for the brake to be put into operation. Any sounds associated with this are normal.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation.

Indicator lamp in Canadian models

Automatic Hold

The concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the parking brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On inclines, the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving away.

For your safety

Automatic Hold is deactivated automatically and the parking brake is set when:

- The engine is switched off.
- A door is opened and the driver's safety belt is unbuckled.
- The vehicle is braked to a standstill with the parking brake while driving.

PARK

The indicator lamp switches from green to red and the letters AUTO H go out.

Indicator lamp in Canadian models

Before driving away:

- Release the parking brake manually.
- Reactivate Automatic Hold.

Leaving the vehicle with the engine running

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, engage position P of the automatic transmission and ensure that the parking brake is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to roll.◀

Activating

Press the button.

The LED and the letters AUTO H light up.

The indicator lamp lights up.

Automatic Hold is activated.

Deactivating

Press the button again.

The LED and the letters AUTO H go out.

Automatic Hold is deactivated.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press on the brake pedal to deactivate it.

When the parking brake, refer to page 66, is set manually, Automatic Hold is deactivated automatically.

Driving

Automatic Hold is activated: the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling when it stops.

The indicator lamp lights up in green.

Press on the accelerator to drive away.

The brake is released automatically.

The indicator lamp goes out.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

Before driving into a car wash

Deactivate Automatic Hold; otherwise, the parking brake will be set when the vehicle is stationary and the vehicle will no longer be able to roll.◀

Parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the engine is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold.

The indicator lamp changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set if the engine is switched off while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

The parking brake can also be released after the engine is switched off, e.g., in a car wash.

Take the remote control with you

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children, for example, cannot release the parking brake.◀

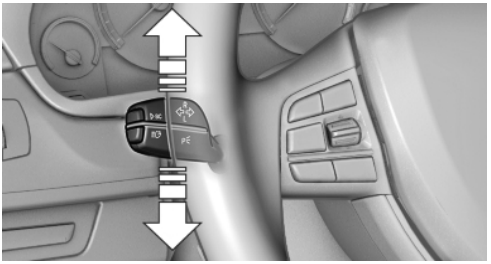
Malfunction

In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling using a wheel chock, for example, when leaving it.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Turn signal, high beams, headlamp flasher

Turn signal



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To switch off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

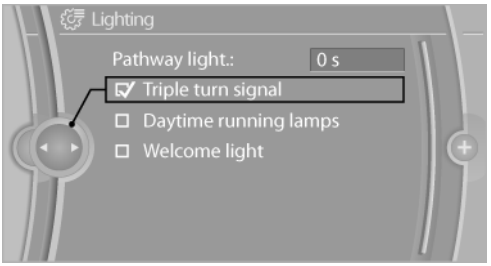
Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point.

The turn signal flashes three times.

The function can be activated or deactivated:

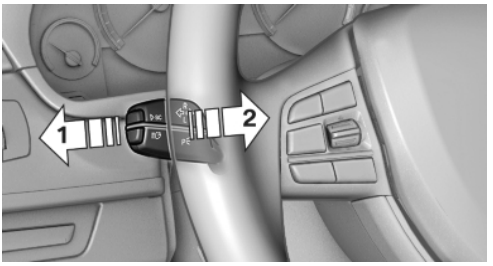
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"



Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlamp flasher



- ▷ High beams, arrow 1.
- ▷ Headlamp flasher, arrow 2.

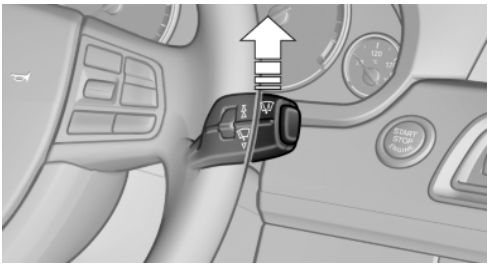
Washer/wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

Do not switch on the wipers if frozen

Do not switch on the wipers if they are frozen onto the windshield; otherwise, the wiper blades and the windshield wiper motor may be damaged.◄

Switching on



Press the wiper levers up.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

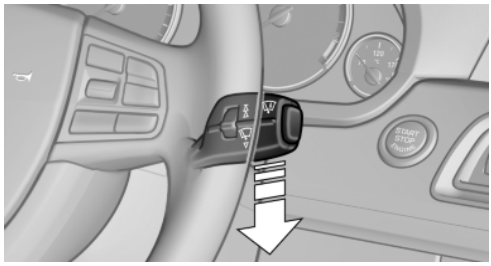
- ▷ Normal wiping speed: press up once.

  The wipers switch to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ Fast wiping speed: press up twice or press once beyond the resistance point.

  The wipers switch to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the wiper levers down.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

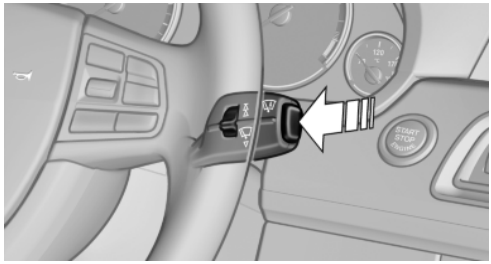
- ▷ Brief wipe: press down once.
- ▷ To switch off normal wipe: press down once.
- ▷ To switch off fast wipe: press down twice.

Rain sensor

The time between wipes is controlled automatically and depends on the intensity of the rainfall.

The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating/deactivating the rain sensor



Press the button on the wiper lever.

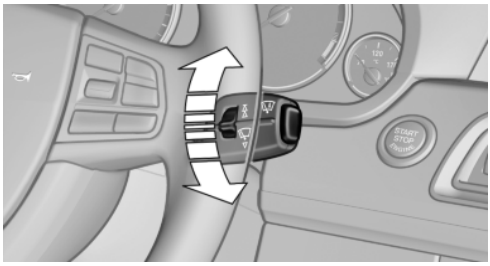
When activated, the wipers move over the windshield once.

The LED in the steering column stalk lights up.

Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes

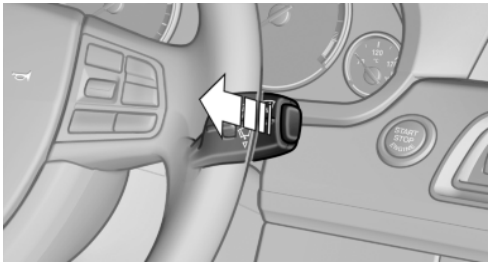
Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash; otherwise, damage could be caused by undesired wiper activation.◄

Rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the thumb wheel.

Washing the windshield, headlamps



Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

In addition, the headlamps are cleaned at regular intervals when the vehicle lights are switched on.

Do not use the washer system at freezing temperatures

Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield; otherwise, your vision could be obscured. For this reason, use antifreeze.

Avoid using the washer when the reservoir is empty; otherwise, you could damage the pump.◄

Windshield washer nozzles

The washer jets are automatically heated* whenever the ignition is switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Fold-out position of the wipers

Required when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, for example.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Under frosty conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen onto the windshield.
3. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wiper remains in a nearly vertical position.

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system, refer to page 70, must be reactivated.

Fold the wipers back down

Before switching the ignition on, fold the wipers back down to the windshield; otherwise, the wipers may become damaged when they are switched on.◄

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the wiper levers down. The wipers move to their resting position and are ready for operation.

Washer fluid

General information

Antifreeze for washer fluid

Antifreeze is flammable. Therefore, keep it away from sources of ignition.

Only keep it in the closed original container and inaccessible to children.

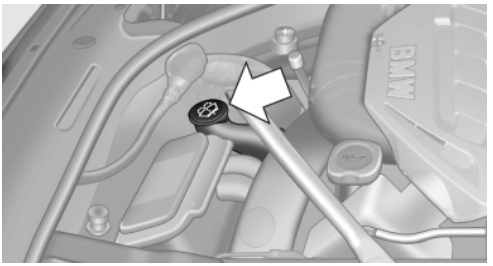
Follow the instructions on the container.◄

Container for washer fluid

Adding washer fluid

Only add washer fluid when the engine is cool, and then close the cover completely to avoid contact between the washer fluid and hot engine parts.

Otherwise, there is the danger of fire and a risk to personal safety if the fluid is spilled.◄



All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Mix the washer fluid before adding to maintain the correct mixing ratio.

Capacity

approx. 5.3 US quarts/ 5 liters

Automatic transmission with Steptronic

Transmission positions

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are available.

R is Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N is Neutral

Use in automatic car washes, for example. The vehicle can roll.

When the ignition is switched off, refer to page 65, position P is engaged automatically.

P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive wheels are blocked.

P is engaged automatically:

- After the engine is switched off, if the car is in radio ready state, refer to page 65, or if the

ignition is switched off, refer to page 65, and if position R or D is engaged.

- If the ignition is switched off and position N is engaged.
- If the vehicle is standing with position R or D engaged and you unfasten the belt of the driver's seat and open the driver's door.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Press on the accelerator beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Engaging the transmission position

- Transmission position P can only be disengaged if the engine is running and the brake pedal is pressed.
- With the vehicle stationary, press on the brake pedal before shifting out of P or N; otherwise, the shift command will not be executed: shift lock.

  Depress the brake until you start driving

  To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.◀

Engaging D, R and N

Briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, beyond a resistance point if necessary.

After releasing the selector lever, it returns to its center position.

Press the Unlock button to:

- Engage R.
- Shift out of P.

Engaging P

Press button P.

Sport program and manual mode M/S

Activating the sport program

Push the selector lever to the left out of transmission position D.

DS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Activating the M/S manual mode

Push the selector lever to the left out of transmission position D.

Push the selector lever forward or backward.

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., M1.

- ▷ To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- ▷ To shift up: press the selector lever backward.

The transmission only shifts up or down if the rpm and vehicle speed are appropriate. If the engine speed is too high, the transmission does not shift down.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument panel, followed by the current gear.

Ending the sport program/manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

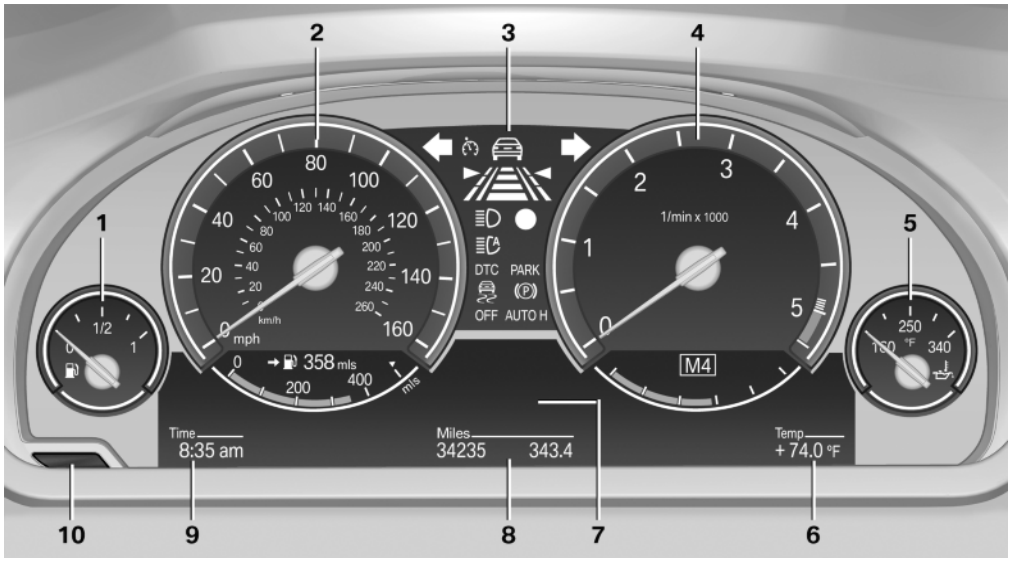
Displays in the instrument cluster

The transmission position is displayed, e.g., P.

Displays

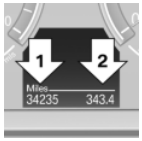
Instrument cluster

At a glance



1 Fuel gauge
2 Speedometer
3 Indicator/warning lamps
4 Tachometer
5 Oil temperature
6 External temperature*
7 Electronic displays
8 Miles, trip miles
9 Clock*
10 Display/reset miles

Odometer and trip odometer



- Odometer, arrow 1.
- Trip odometer, arrow 2.

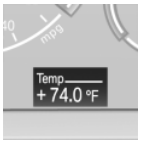
Press the knob.

- When the ignition is switched off, the time, external temperature and odometer are displayed.

- When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

External temperature

External temperature warning



If the display drops to +37 °F/ +3 °C, a signal sounds.

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

There is the increased danger of ice.

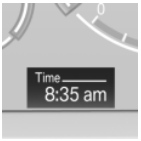
Ice on roads

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C, there can be a risk of ice on roads.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Therefore, drive carefully on bridges and shady roads, for example, to avoid the increased danger of an accident.◂

Time



The time is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

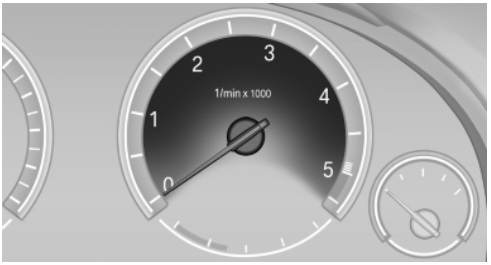
Setting the time and time format, refer to page 80.

Date

The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Setting the date and date format, refer to page 80.

Tachometer



Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant, and with it the engine, become too hot, a warning message is displayed.

Check the coolant level, refer to page 237.

Engine oil temperature

- Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the right half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the pointer is at the high temperature end. Switch off the engine immediately and allow it to cool down.

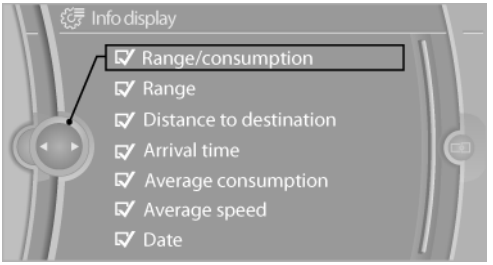
Check the oil level, refer to page 236.

Current fuel consumption

Displays the current fuel consumption. You can check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Displaying the current fuel consumption

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Additional indicators"



The bar display for the current fuel consumption is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Energy regeneration

The energy of motion of the vehicle is converted to electrical energy while coasting, refer to page 151. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be lowered.

Fuel gauge

Gasoline engine:

Fuel capacity: approx. 18.5 US gal/70 liters

The vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Notes on refueling, refer to page 224.

Range

After the reserve range is reached:

- A message appears briefly.
- The remaining range is shown on the computer.

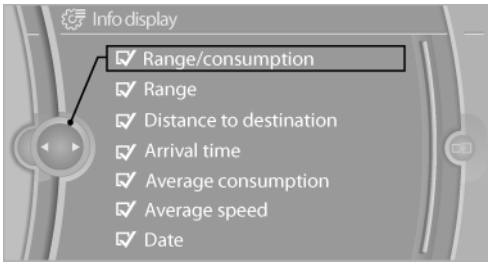
The message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Refuel promptly

Refuel no later than at a range 30 miles/50 km, or engine functions are not ensured and damage may occur.◄

Displaying the cruising range

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Additional indicators"



The bar display for the cruising range is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Selection lists in the instrument cluster

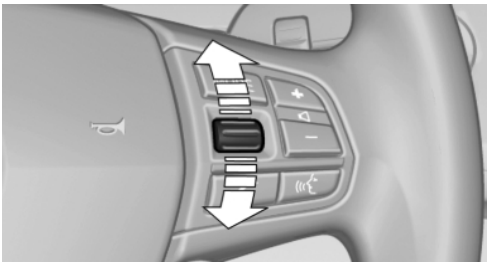
The concept

The following functions can be operated using the buttons and the thumb wheel on the steering wheel and the display in the instrument cluster:

- Current audio source.
- Redial on telephone*.
- Activation of the voice activation system*.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Activating a list and creating the setting

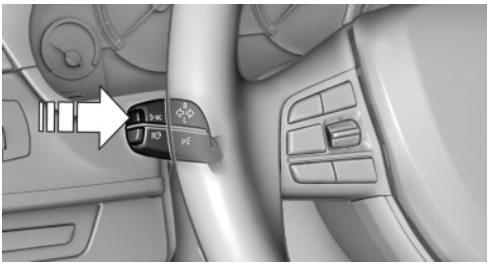


Press a button on the right side of the steering wheel or turn the thumb wheel to activate the required list.

Create the setting using the thumb wheel.

Computer

Calling up information on the info display



Press the computer button on the turn signal lever.

Information is displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

Information at a glance

Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever displays the information on the info display in the following order:

- Range.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Date*.
- Speed Limit Display*.
- Time of arrival*

  After entering the distance or when destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- Distance to destination*

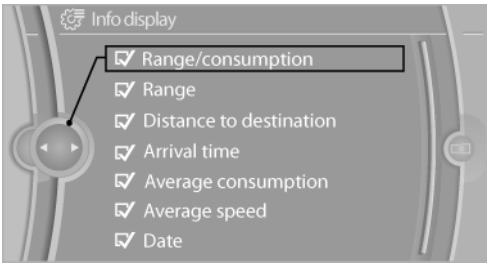
  After entering the distance or when destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- Arrow view of navigation system*

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

Adjusting the info display

You can select what information from the computer is to be displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. Select the desired displays.



Speed limit

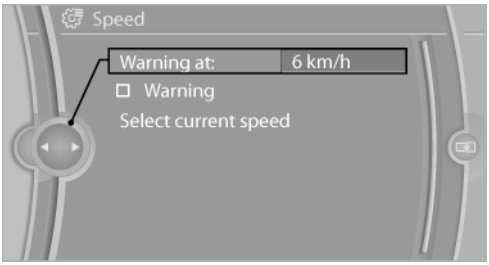
Display of a speed limit which, when reached, should cause a warning to be issued.

Renewed warning if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit once by at least 3 mph/ 5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"

3. "Warning at:"



4. Turn the controller until the desired limit is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

The speed limit is stored.

Activating/deactivating the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"
4. Press the controller.

Applying your current speed as the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the controller.

   The current vehicle speed is stored as the limit.

Resetting values

The average fuel consumption and average speed can be reset.

Press and hold the computer button on the turn signal lever.

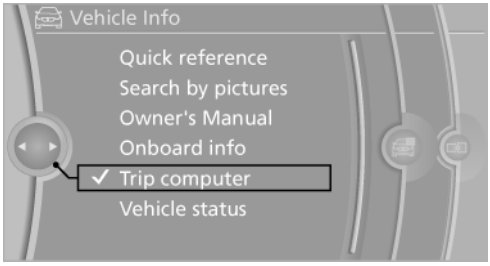
Trip computer

There are two types of computer.

- "Onboard info": the values can be reset as often as necessary.
- "Trip computer": the values provide an overview of the current trip.

Resetting the trip computer

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Trip computer"



3. "Reset": all values are reset.

   "Automatically reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle comes to a standstill.

Display on the Control Display

Display the computer or trip computer on the Control Display.

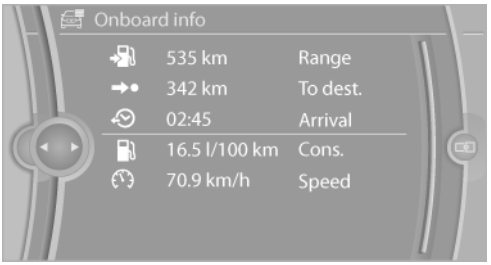
1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

3. "Cons." or "Speed"



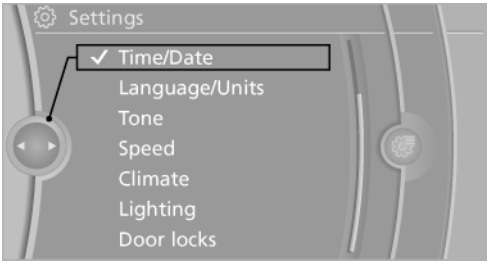
4. "Yes"

Settings on the Control Display

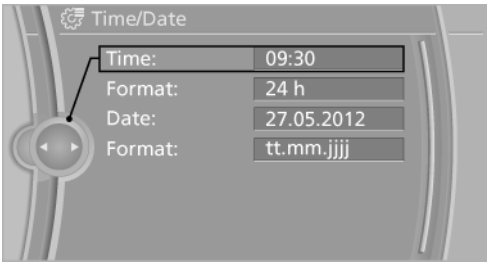
Time

Setting the time

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"



3. "Time:"



4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
7. Press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The time format is stored.

Date

Setting the date

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Make the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Setting the date format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

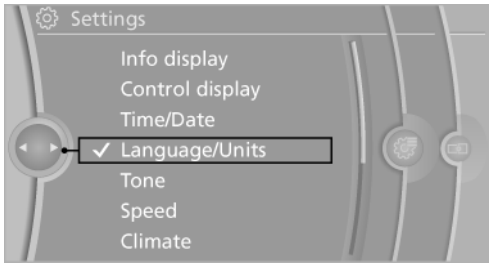
The date format is stored.

Language

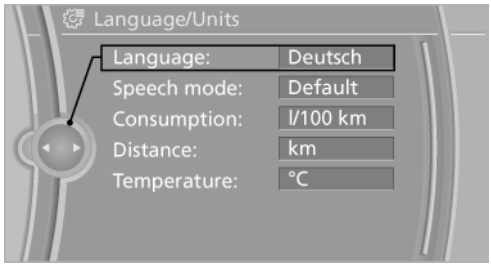
Setting the language

To set the language on the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"



3. "Language:"



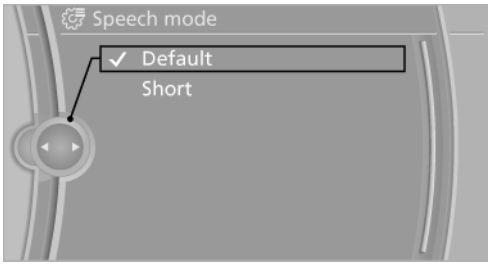
4. Select the desired language.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the voice dialog

To switch between a standard dialog and a short dialog.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the desired dialog.

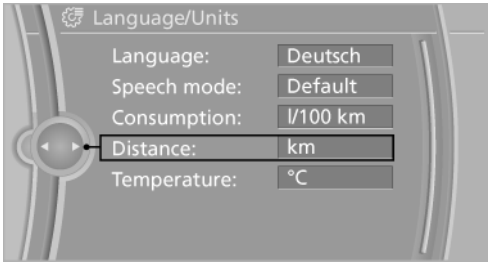


Units of measure

Setting the units of measure

To set the units for fuel consumption, route/distance and temperature:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. Select the desired menu item.



4. Select the desired unit.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness

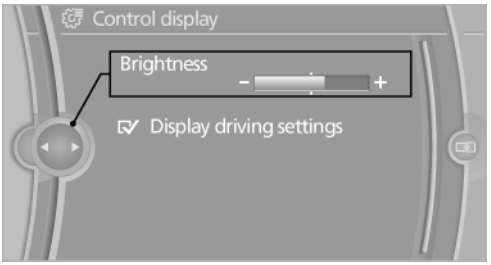
Setting the brightness

To set the brightness of the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

3. "Brightness"



4. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

Service requirements

Display

The driving distance or the time to the next service is displayed briefly after the ignition is switched on.

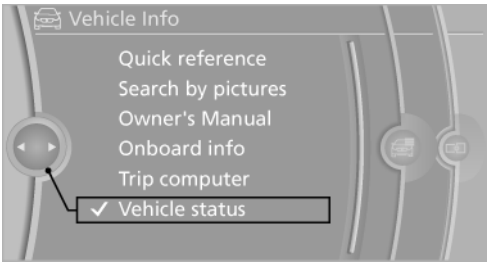
The current service requirements can be read out from the remote control by the service specialist.

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your service center before a service due date, Automatic Service Request, refer to page 217.

Detailed information on service requirements

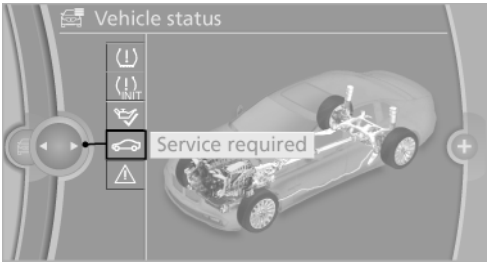
More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. "Service required"

   Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.



4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
	The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. Please make a service appointment.
	The service deadline has already passed.

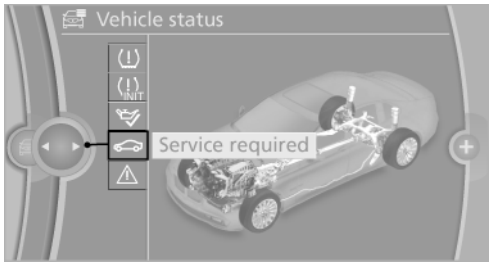
Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the required inspections.

Ensure that the vehicle date and time are set correctly.

1. "Vehicle Info"

2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"



4. "§ Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Create the settings.
7. Confirm.

   The entered date is stored.

Automatic Service Request

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your service center before a service due date.

You can check when your service center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lamps and text messages in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display*.

In addition, an acoustic signal may be output and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Indicator/warning lamps

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Text messages

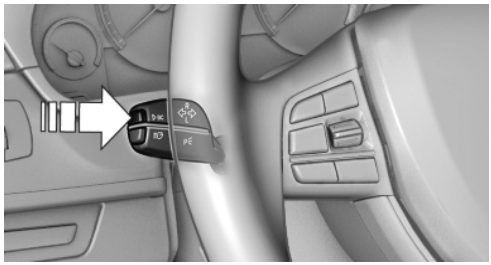
Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lamps.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information on the Control Display, e.g., on the cause of a malfunction or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

The text of urgent messages is displayed automatically.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the computer button on the turn signal lever.

▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

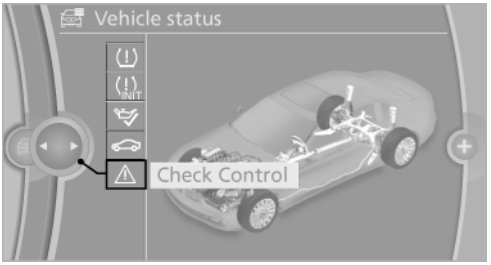
malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

These messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

▷ Other Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"



4. Select the text message.

Messages after trip completion

Malfunctions indicated during a trip are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

Speed limit detection*

The concept

Speed limit detection shows the current maximum allowable speed in the instrument cluster.

The camera at the base of the interior rearview mirror monitors traffic signs at the edge of the road and uses the information from the navigation system.

In this way, the allowable speed is displayed even in the absence of traffic signs, such as within town limits.

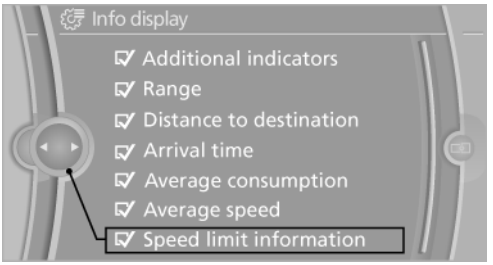
Personal judgment

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

Speed limit detection assists the driver and does not replace the human eye.◄

Switching on/off

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Speed limit information"



If speed limit detection is switched on, it can be displayed on the info display in the instrument cluster via the computer.

Display

The following is displayed in the instrument cluster:

▷ Current speed limit.

▷ No speed limit - for the German autobahn.

▷ Speed limit detection is not available.

Information regarding speed limit detection can also be displayed in the Head-up Display, refer to page 126.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.

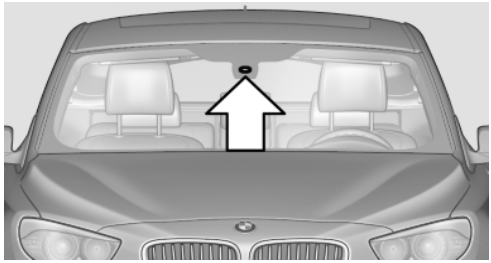
▷ When signs are concealed by objects.

▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.

▷ When driving toward bright lights.

- When the windshield is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc., in front of the interior rearview mirror.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- When roads differ from the navigation, e.g. due to changes in the road network.
- When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.

Camera



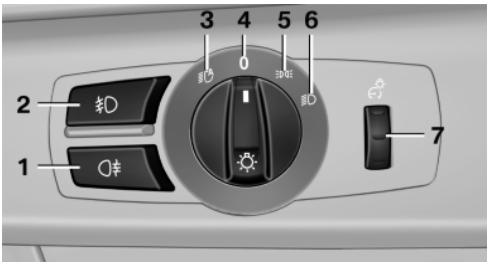
The camera is located on the front of the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the area in front of the interior rearview mirror clear.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Lamps

At a glance



1 Rear fog lamps*
2 Front fog lamps
3 Automatic headlamp control/adaptive light control*/High-beam Assistant*/welcome lamps
4 Lamps off/daytime running lights*
5 Parking lamps
6 Low beams/welcome lamps
7 Instrument lighting

Parking lamps/low beams, headlamp control

Parking lamps

Switch position : the vehicle lamps light up on all sides, e.g., for parking.

Do not use the parking lamps for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking, it is preferable to switch on the one-sided roadside parking lamps, refer to page 87.

Low beams

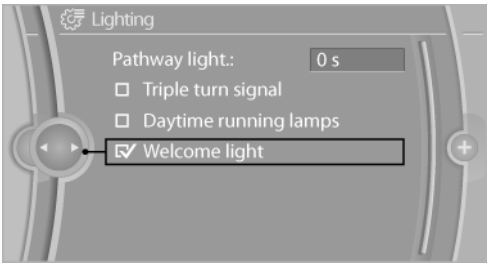
Switch position with the ignition switched on: the low beams light up.

Welcome lamps

When parking the vehicle, leave the switch in position or : the parking and interior lamps light up briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating the welcome lamps

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome light"



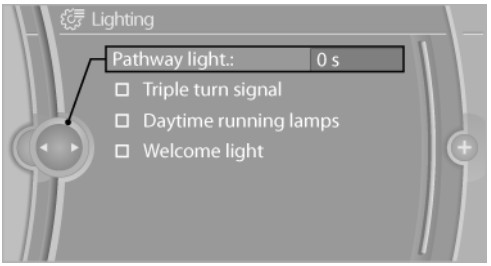
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Headlamp courtesy delay feature

The low beams stay lit for a short while after the ignition is switched off, if the lamps are switched off and the headlamp flasher is switched on.

Setting the duration

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway light.: s"



4. Set the duration.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Automatic headlamp control

Switch position : the low beams are switched on and off automatically, e.g., in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

The low beams always stay on when the fog lamps are switched on.

Personal responsibility

The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions.

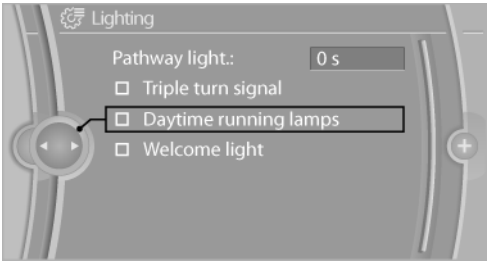
For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the lamps manually under these conditions.◀

Daytime running lights*

The daytime running lights light up in position 0, and . After the ignition is switched off, the parking lamps light up in position .

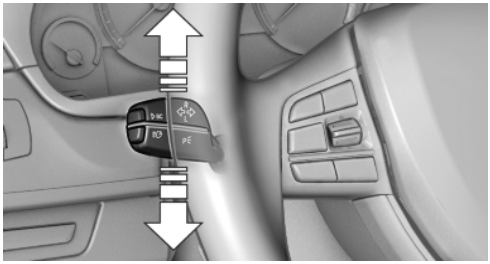
Activating/deactivating

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Roadside parking lamps



The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on

With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

Switching off

Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.

Adaptive light control*

The concept

Adaptive light control is a variable headlamp control system that enables dynamic illumination of the road surface.

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

In tight curves, such as on mountainous roads or when turning, turning lamps that light up the inside area of the curve are switched on at speeds up to approx. 70 km/h, approx. 44 mph.

Controls

Activating

Switch position with the ignition switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

The turning lamps are automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the adaptive light control directs light towards the front passenger side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

When driving in reverse, only the turning lamp is active and illuminates the outside of the curve.

Self-leveling headlights

The self-leveling headlights feature adapts the light distribution to the contours of the road.

The light distribution is lowered on hilltops to avoid blinding oncoming traffic and raised in depressions to increase visibility.

Malfunction

A message is displayed.

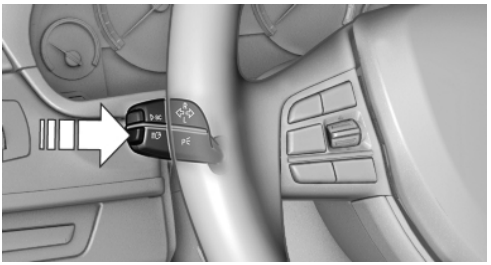
Adaptive light control is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High-beam assistant*

The concept

When the lights are switched on, this system automatically switches the high beams on and off. The procedure is controlled by a sensor on the front of the interior rearview mirror. The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on whenever the traffic situation allows. The driver can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating the high-beam assistant



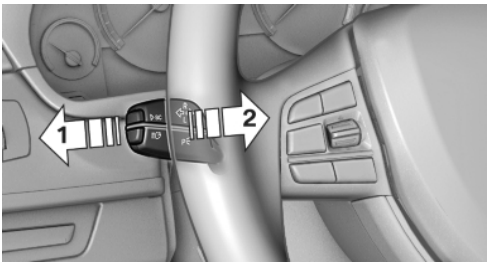
1. Turn the light switch to AUTO or HIGH BEAM.
2. Press the button on the turn signal lever, arrow.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

When the lights are switched on, the high beams are switched on and off automatically.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.

Switching the high beams on and off manually



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
- ▷ High beams off/headlamp flasher, arrow 2.

To reactivate the high-beam assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

System limits

Personal responsibility

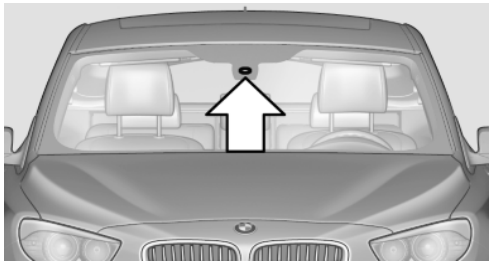
The high-beam assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually switch off the high beams in situations where this is required to avoid a safety risk.◂

The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ In detecting poorly-lit road users, such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.

- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on freeways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- At low speeds.
- When the windshield in front of the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Camera



The camera is located on the front of the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the area in front of the interior rearview mirror clear.

Fog lamps

Front fog lamps*

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on.

Press the button. The green indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlamp control, refer to page 87, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lamps.

Cornering lamp*

In the switch position, a cornering lamp is switched on for a broader light distribution at speeds up to 68 mph/110 km/h.

Instrument lighting

Adjusting

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness using the thumb wheel.

Interior lamps

General information

The interior lamps, footwell lamps, entry lamps and courtesy lamps are controlled automatically.

The brightness of some of these lamps is influenced by the thumb wheel for the instrument lighting.

1 Interior lamps

2 Reading lamp

Switching the interior lamps on and off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

To clear this setting: press the button.

Reading lamps

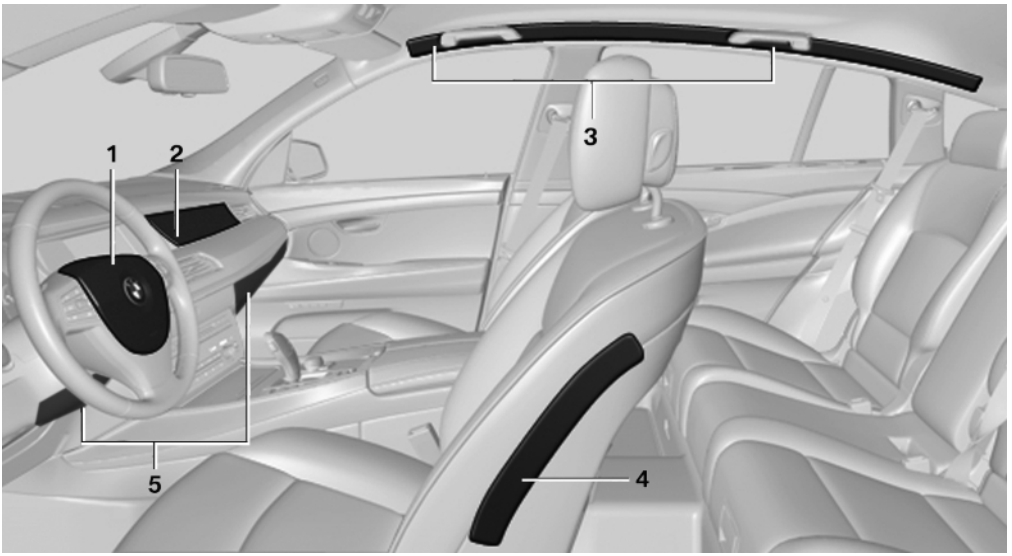
Press the button.

Reading lamps are located at the front and rear next to the interior lamps.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Safety

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbags
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbags

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint.

Side airbags

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the body on the side in the chest area.

Head airbags

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag protects the legs during a frontal collision.

Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Information on how to ensure the optimal protective effect of the airbags

- Keep at a distance from the airbags.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim, holding your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the danger of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible if the airbag is triggered.
- There should be no people, animals, or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.

- Keep the dashboard and window on the front passenger side clear, i.e., do not cover with adhesive labels or coverings, and do not attach holders such as for navigation instruments and mobile phones.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the footwell; otherwise, leg injuries can occur if the front airbag is triggered.
- Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not approved specifically for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag and do not rest against the head airbag; otherwise, injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered.
- Do not remove the airbag restraint system.
- Do not remove the steering wheel.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, cover them or modify them in any way.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, the seats, the roof pillars and the sides of the headliner.◀

Even when all instructions are followed closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive individuals.

In the case of a malfunction, deactivation and after triggering of the airbags

Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered; otherwise, there is the danger of burns.

Only have the airbags checked, repaired or dismantled and the airbag generator scrapped by your service center or a workshop that has the necessary authorization for handling explosives.

Non-professional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired triggering of the airbag, either of which could result in injury.◀

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

The system determines whether the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the resistance of the human body.

The front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly.

Leave feet in the footwell

Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell; otherwise, the front passenger airbags may not function properly.◀

Child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, see the safety notes and instructions under Children on the front passenger seat.◀

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To make sure that the occupied seat cushion can be evaluated correctly

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by the manufacturer of your vehicle.
- Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are activated or deactivated.

- The indicator lamp lights up when a child who is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system intended for that purpose is detected on the seat or the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Most child seats are detected by the system, especially the child seats required by the NHTSA at the time the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.

Strength of the driver's and front passenger airbag

The strength with which the driver's and front passenger airbags are triggered depends on the position of the driver's and front passenger seats.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long-term, calibrate the front seats when a corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Move the respective seat forward all the way.
2. Move the respective seat forward again. It moves forward briefly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Unobstructed area of movement

Ensure that the area of movement of the seats is unobstructed to avoid personal injury or damage to objects.◄

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM*

The concept

Monitoring of the tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system notifies you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

Conditions for operation

The system must have been reset when the inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured. Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly. Reset the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

System limits

Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.◄

The system does not operate correctly if it has not been reset. For example, a flat tire may be indicated despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot indicate a flat tire:

- For a mounted wheel without TPM electronics.
- When the TPM is disturbed by other systems or devices with the same radio frequency.

Status display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

A change in the tire inflation pressure during driving is taken into account.

A correction is only necessary if indicated by TPM.

Green

The tire inflation pressure is equal to the target state.

One wheel is yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire.

All wheels are yellow

- A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in several tires.
- The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus warns based on the inflation pressures initialized last.

Gray

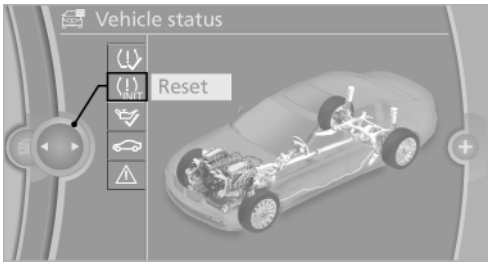
The system cannot detect a flat tire. Reasons for this may be:

- TPM is being reset.
- Disturbance by systems or devices with the same radio frequency.
- Malfunction.

Resetting the system

Reset the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset TPM"



4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Reset the tire pressure using "Reset".
6. Drive away.

The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After driving for a few minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are applied as set values. The resetting process is completed automatically during driving. The tires are shown in green and "TPM active" is shown on the Control Display.

The trip can be interrupted at any time. If you drive away again, the process resumes automatically.

If a flat tire is detected during a reset, all tires are displayed in yellow.

Low tire pressure message

The yellow warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, a signal sounds.

- There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.
- The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus warns based on the inflation pressures initialized last.

Cautiously reduce the vehicle speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Do not continue driving without run-flat tires

Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents.◄

Continued driving with a flat tire

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

- With a light load: 1 to 2 people without luggage: approx. 90 miles/150 km.
- With a medium load: 2 people, trunk full, or 4 people without luggage: approx. 50 miles/80 km.
- With a full load: 4 people, trunk full: approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.◄

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of the tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, and contact your service center.◄

Message when not reset

The yellow warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display.

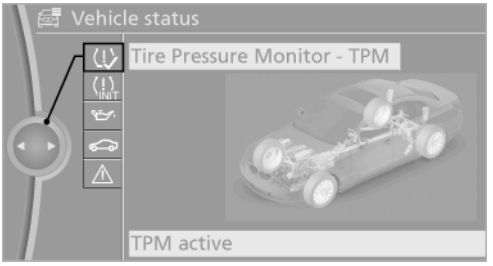
The system was not reset, e.g., after a wheel change.

Check the tire inflation pressure and reset the system.

Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor - TPM"



The status is displayed.

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. The tires are displayed in gray on the Control Display. No flat tire can be detected.

Display in the following situations:

- Malfunction: have the system checked.
- A wheel without wheel electronics is fitted: have the service center check it if necessary.
- Disturbance by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the disturbance, the system automatically becomes active again.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor*

The concept

The system detects a pressure loss on the basis of speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel change. This is detected and reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirements

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

System limits

Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.◄

A natural, even pressure loss in all four tires cannot be detected.

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

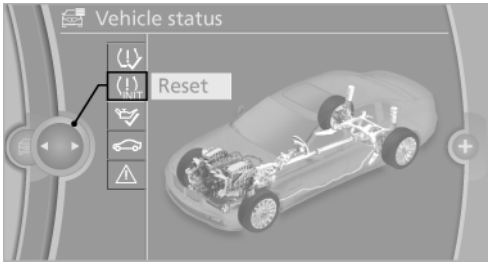
- When the system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration.
- When driving with snow chains*.

Initialization

The initialization process adopts the set inflation tire pressures as reference values for the detection of a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains*.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"



4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Start the initialization with "Reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Indication of a flat tire

The yellow warning lamp and the vehicle symbol light up. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, a signal sounds.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with regular tires* or run-flat tires*.

   Run-flat tires are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

Normal tires*

1. Identify the damaged wheel.

   If an identification is not possible, please contact the service center.
2. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Run-flat tires*

1. Carefully reduce your speed to a maximum of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   Do not continue driving without run-flat tires

   Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents.◀
2. Repair the puncture.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

- With a light load: 1 to 2 people without luggage: approx. 90 miles/150 km.
- With a medium load: 2 people, trunk full, or 4 people without luggage: approx. 50 miles/80 km.
- With a full load: 4 people, trunk full: approx. 30 miles/50 km.

If there is minor tire damage, especially on the tire tread, the distance that you can travel with the damaged tire can be extended.

After notification, inflate the damaged tire to a maximum of 3.5 bar at the next opportunity.

Do not reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor. The existing flat tire notification will continue to act as a reminder of the defective tire. The procedure can be repeated several times.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.◀

Final tire failure

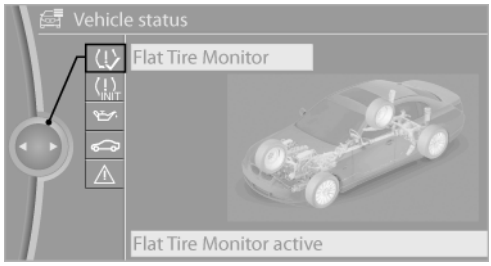
Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of the tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, and contact your service center.◀

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the FTM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Flat Tire Monitor"



The status is displayed.

Lane departure warning*

The concept

This system issues a warning at speeds above approx. 40 mph/65 km/h if the vehicle is about to leave the lane on roads with lane lines.

The steering wheel begins vibrating gently.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Switching on/off

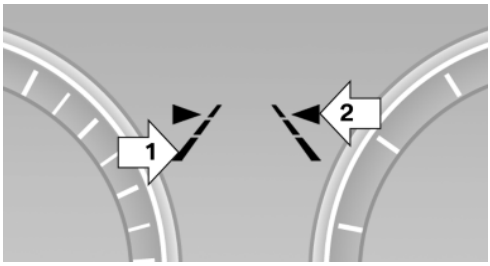
Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The system can issue warnings at speeds above approx. 40 mph/65 km/h.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display



- Lines, arrow 1: the system is activated.
- Arrows, arrow 2: at least one lane line was detected and warnings can be issued.

Issued warning

If you leave the lane and if a lane line has been detected, the steering wheel begins vibrating.

If the turn signal is set before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

End of warning

The warning ends:

- Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- When braking hard.
- When using the turn signal.

System limits

Personal responsibility

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the course of the road and the traffic situation.

In the event of a warning, do not jerk the steering wheel, as you may lose control of the vehicle.◀

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- In the event of worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lines such as in construction areas.
- When lane lines are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

- When the lines are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When driving toward bright lights.
- When the windshield in front of the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Malfunctions

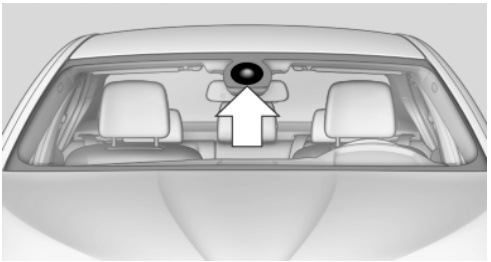
Steering wheel vibration

Frequent activation of the steering wheel vibration causes the system to overheat.

This causes the lane departure warning to become deactivated.

Let the system cool and reactivate it by pressing the button.

Camera

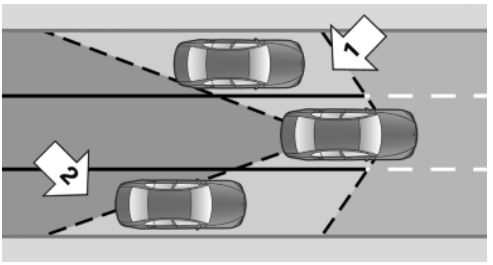


The camera is located on the front of the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the area in front of the interior rearview mirror clear.

Active Blind Spot Detection*

The concept



Two radar sensors below the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle at speeds above approx. 30 mph/50 km/h.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind on the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The lamp in the exterior mirror housing lights up dimly.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The lamp in the housing of the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Switching on/off

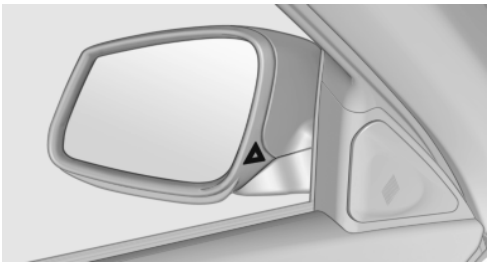
Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The system can issue warnings at speeds above approx. 30 mph/50 km/h.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display



Information stage

The dimmed lamp in the mirror housing indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Warning

If the turn signal is set while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the lamp in the mirror housing flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the turn signal is switched off, or the other vehicle leaves the critical zone.

System limits

Personal responsibility

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

In the event of a warning, do not jerk the steering wheel, as you may lose control over the vehicle.◄

The function may be limited in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- In tight curves or on narrow lanes.

Malfunctions

Steering wheel vibration

Frequent activation of the steering wheel vibration causes the system to overheat.

This causes Active Blind Spot Detection to become deactivated.

Let the system cool and reactivate it by pressing the button.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located under the rear bumper.

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- Dirty or icy bumper.
- Stickers on the bumper.

A message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- NBG009014A.

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Brake force display*

The concept

- During normal brake application, the outer brake lamps light up.
- During heavy brake application, the inner brake lamps light up in addition.

Driving stability control systems

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle remains steerable even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost. It thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

Adaptive brake assistant

In combination with the Active Cruise Control, this system ensures that the brakes respond even more rapidly when braking in critical situations. Refer also to Collision warning, refer to page 112.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The concept

DSC prevents traction loss in the driving wheels when driving away and accelerating.

DSC also recognizes unstable vehicle conditions, such as fishtailing or nose-diving. Subject to physical limits, DSC helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes at individual wheels.

Adjust your driving style to the situation

An appropriate driving style is always the responsibility of the driver.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC.

Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin by driving in a risky manner.◄

Deactivating/activating the DSC OFF program

The program can be deactivated/activated via Dynamic Driving Control, refer to page 103.

Indicator/warning lamps

The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

The concept

The DTC system is a version of the DSC in which forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum forward momentum on special road conditions, e.g., unplowed snowy roads, but driving stability is limited.

It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When rocking the vehicle or driving off in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- When driving with snow chains.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

The system can be deactivated/activated via the TRACTION and SPORT+ programs of the Dynamic Driving Control, refer to page 103.

Dynamic Drive*

The concept

Dynamic Drive reduces the lateral inclination of the vehicle that occurs during rapid driving in curves or during quick evasive maneuvers.

Driving stability and driving comfort are increased under all driving conditions. The system utilizes active stabilizer bars on the front and rear axles that react immediately to all driving situations.

Programs

The system offers two different programs.

The programs can be selected via Dynamic Driving Control, refer to page 103.

SPORT

Sporty tuning for greater driving agility.

NORMAL

Comfort-oriented tuning for optimal comfort.

Dynamic Damping Control*

The concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

The system enhances driving dynamics and comfort as required for the road surface and driving style.

Programs

The system offers three different programs.

The programs can be selected via Dynamic Driving Control, refer to page 103.

SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

NORMAL

Balanced tuning between the COMFORT and SPORT programs.

COMFORT

Comfort-oriented tuning of the shock absorbers for optimal traveling comfort.

Integral Active Steering*

The concept

Integral Active Steering is a combination of Active Steering and rear axle steering.

Active Steering varies the steering angle of the wheels in relation to the steering wheel movement as a function of the speed.

At speeds up to approx. 37 mph/60 km/h, e.g., in curves, the steering angle is increased, i.e., steering becomes more direct.

The rear axle steering acts to increase maneuverability by turning the rear wheels slightly in a direction opposite to the front wheels.

At higher speeds, the steering angle is increasingly reduced.

The rear wheels are turned to the same angle as the front wheels.

In critical situations, Integral Active Steering can specifically steer the front and rear wheels to stabilize the vehicle before the driver intervenes, e.g., when braking where road conditions differ on the left and right sides of the vehicle.

Initializing

In rare cases, it may become necessary to initialize the Integral Active Steering.

The warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display.

1. With the engine running, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left and right several

times in a uniform manner until the warning lamp disappears.

2. Have the system checked if the warning lamp does not go out after moving the steering wheel approx. 6 times or if the steering wheel is at an angle.

Using snow chains

Ensure that the rear axle steering is deactivated when using snow chains, refer to page 233.

Programs

The system offers two different programs.

The programs can be selected via Dynamic Driving Control, refer to page 103.

SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the Integral Active Steering for greater driving agility.

NORMAL

Balanced tuning of the Integral Active Steering for optimal traveling comfort.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, the steering wheel must be turned further, while the vehicle responds more sensitively to steering wheel movements in the higher speed range.

The stability-enhancing intervention may be deactivated.

Proceed cautiously and drive defensively.

Have the system checked.

Self-leveling suspension

The concept

The self-leveling suspension keeps the vehicle height and ground clearance constant. The height of the vehicle at the rear axle is maintained at a predefined level under all load conditions.

The system ensures consistent comfort by keeping spring travel constant in all driving situations.

Malfunction

A message appears on the Control Display. A malfunction has occurred in the self-leveling suspension. Vehicle handling may be altered and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Visit your nearest service center.

Dynamic Driving Control*

The concept

Dynamic Driving Control can be used to adjust the driving dynamics of the vehicle. Several programs are available for this purpose; they can be activated using the two Dynamic Driving Control buttons.

Operating the programs

Press the button	Program
	DSC OFF TRACTION
	SPORT+ SPORT NORMAL COMFORT*

For Dynamic Damper Control*, the lower button is labeled with COMFORT.

Automatic program change

The system automatically switches to NORMAL in the following situations:

- Failure of Integral Active Steering*.
- Failure of Dynamic Damping Control*.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.

DSC OFF

Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Stabilizing interventions by the Integral Active Steering* system are only performed by the rear axle steering.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC OFF

Press and hold the button, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for the DSC lights up in the instrument cluster and DSC OFF is displayed in the tachometer.

The DSC system is switched off.

Deactivating DSC OFF

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lamps

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the tachometer.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

TRACTION

Maximum traction on loose road surfaces. DTC Dynamic Traction Control is switched on. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

Activating TRACTION

Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the tachometer.

The DSC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

Deactivating TRACTION

Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lamps

When DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the tachometer.

The indicator lamp lights up: DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

SPORT+

Sporty driving with optimized chassis and suspension during limited driving stabilization.

Dynamic Traction Control is switched on.

The driver handles several of the stabilization tasks.

Activating SPORT+

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT+ appears in the tachometer and the DSC indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lamps

SPORT+ is displayed in the tachometer.

The indicator lamp lights up: DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the suspension for greater driving agility with maximum driving stabilization.

The program can be configured to individual specifications.

The configuration is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating SPORT

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT+ appears in the tachometer.

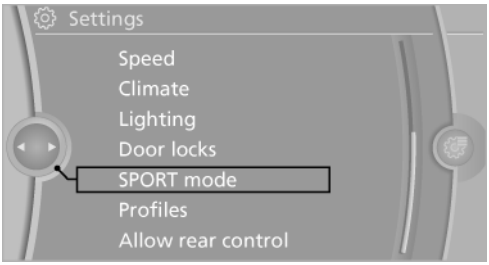
Configuring SPORT

When the display is activated on the Control Display, refer to page 105, the sport program can be set to individual specifications.

After the sport program is activated, select "Configure SPORT mode" on the displayed panel and configure the program.

Optionally, the sport program can be configured before it is activated:

1. "Settings"
2. "SPORT mode"



3. Configure the program.

This configuration is retrieved when the sport program is activated.

NORMAL

For a balanced tuning with maximum driving stabilization.

Activating NORMAL

Press the button repeatedly until the program display in the tachometer goes out.

In certain situations, the system automatically changes to the NORMAL program, automatic program change, refer to page 103.

COMFORT*

Comfort-oriented tuning of the shock absorbers for optimal traveling comfort with maximum driving stabilization.

Activating COMFORT

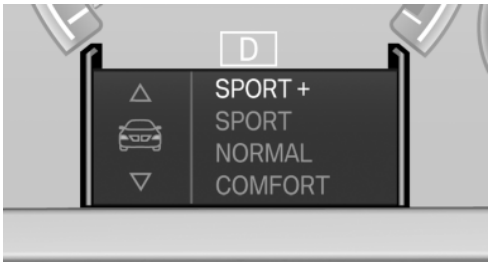
Press the button repeatedly until COMFORT appears in the tachometer.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Selected program

The selected program is displayed in the tachometer.

Program selection



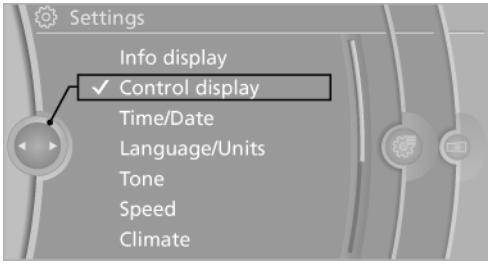
Pressing the button displays a list of the selectable programs.

Display on the Control Display

Program changes can be displayed briefly on the Control Display.

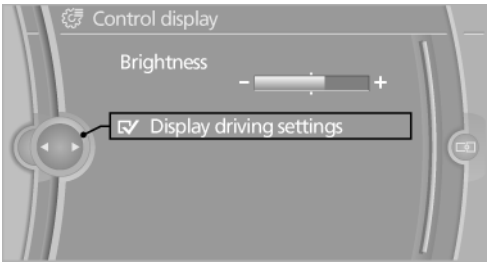
To do so, make the following settings:

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

3. "Display driving settings"



Drive-off assistant

This system supports driving away on gradients. The parking brake is not required.

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive away without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle load, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

Driving off without delay

After releasing the foot brake, start driving without delay, since the drive-off assistant will not hold the vehicle in place for more than approx. 2 seconds and the vehicle will begin rolling back.◄

Driving comfort

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function, ACC*

The concept

This system can be used to select a desired speed that the vehicle will maintain automatically on clear roads.

To the extent possible, the system automatically adjusts the speed to a slower vehicle ahead of you.

The distance that the vehicle maintains to the vehicle ahead of you can be varied.

For safety reasons, it depends on the speed.

To maintain a certain distance, the system automatically decelerates, applies the brakes lightly, or accelerates again if the vehicle ahead begins moving faster.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits. If the vehicle ahead of your drives away again from a halt, your vehicle is able to accelerate if operated accordingly.

Even if some time passes before the vehicle drives away again, the BMW can still be accelerated automatically and simply.

As soon as the road is clear, it accelerates to the desired speed.

The speed is also maintained on downhill gradients, but may not be maintained on uphill slopes if engine power is insufficient.

Buttons at a glance

1 System on/off, interrupt

2 Resume speed

3 Store speed*

4 Increase distance

5 Store, maintain/change speed

6 Reduce distance

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

I/O Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamps in the instrument cluster light up and the marking in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control can be used.

When the speed limit is switched on, DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 101, is switched on as well, if necessary.

Switching off

Deactivated or interrupted system

If the system is deactivated or interrupted, actively intervene by braking and, if necessary, with evasive maneuvers; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

If switching off the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

I/O Press the button.

- If active: press twice.
- If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed and distance are deleted.

Interrupting

I/O When active, press the button.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

The system is automatically interrupted if:

- The brakes are applied.
- Transmission position D is disengaged.
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- DSC is actively controlling stability.
- The safety belt and the driver's door are opened when the vehicle is standing.
- The system has not detected objects for an extended period, e.g., on a road with very little traffic without road edge line markings.
- The radar sensor is dirty.

Maintaining/storing the speed

SET Press the button.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

It is displayed in the speedometer and briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, Displays in the instrument cluster, refer to page 109.

Maintaining, storing or changing the speed

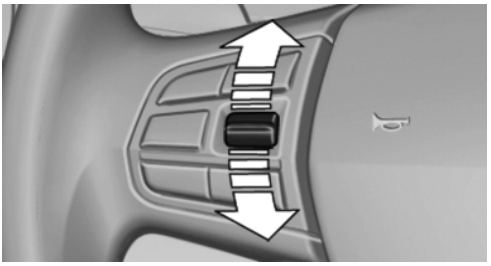
The rocker switch can be pressed while the system is interrupted to maintain and store the current speed.

Adapting the desired speed

Adapt the desired speed to the road conditions and be ready to brake at all times; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

Speed differences

Great speed differences with vehicles driving ahead of you, e.g., when rapidly approaching a truck or when another vehicle swerves into your own lane, cannot be compensated for by the system.◄



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed if the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/ 1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h. Max. adjustable speed: 110 mph/180 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Distance

Selecting a distance

Adjust the distance according to the traffic and weather conditions; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring. Maintain the prescribed safety distance.◄

Reduce distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, refer to page 109, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Increase distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, refer to page 109, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Calling up the desired speed and distance

While driving

RES Press the button with the system switched on.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When the ignition is switched off.

While standing

Before leaving the vehicle

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, engage position P of the automatic transmission and apply the parking brake. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to roll.◀

- The vehicle was braked to a halt by the system.

  When the marking in the speedometer is orange:

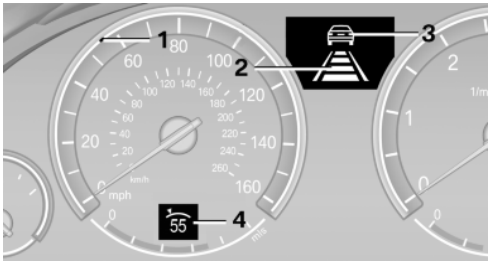
  The vehicle ahead of you drives away: to accelerate, press on the accelerator briefly, or press the RES button or the rocker switch. The marking turns green again and your vehicle follows the vehicle ahead of you.

Rolling bars in the distance indicator mean that the vehicle ahead of you has driven off.

- You actively braked your vehicle to a halt by pressing on the brake pedal and it is standing behind another vehicle:

1. RES Press the button to call up a stored desired speed.
2. Release the brake pedal.
3. Press on the accelerator briefly, or press the RES button or the rocker switch when the vehicle ahead of you drives away.

Displays in the instrument cluster



1 Display of desired speed
2 Distance to vehicle ahead of you
3 Vehicle symbol
4 Brief status display

Desired speed

Marking in the speedometer

- The marking lights up in green: the system is active.
- The marking lights up in orange: the system has been interrupted.
- The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

Brief status display

Selected desired speed

If --- appears briefly on the display for Check Control messages, it is possible that the system requirements for operation are currently not met.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

The selected distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you is shown.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Distance display	
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3
	Distance 4 This value is set after the system is switched on.
	The system has been interrupted or distance control is deactivated because the accelerator is being pressed; a vehicle was not detected.
	Distance control is deactivated because the accelerator is being pressed; a vehicle was detected.
Rolling bars: the detected vehicle has driven away.	

Indicator/warning lamps

Personal responsibility

The indicator and warning lamps do not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her desired driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.◀

The vehicle symbol lights up in orange:

A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

The vehicle symbol flashes orange:

The conditions are not adequate for operating the system.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively assume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator.

The vehicle symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds:

You are requested to intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

System limits

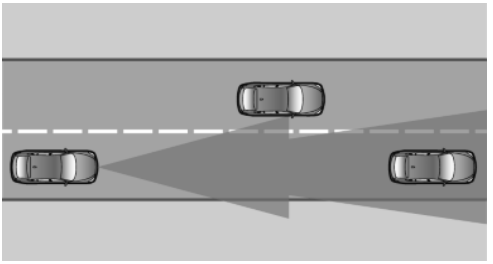
Speed range

Best results are achieved when using the system on well-developed roads and highways. The desired speed can be selected between 20 mph/30 km/h to 110 mph/180 km/h.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Comply with the legal speed limit in every situation when using the system.

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

Two-wheeled vehicles driving ahead of you for instance might not be detected.

Limited detection capacity

Because of the limits to the detection capacity, you should be alert at all times so that you can intervene actively, if necessary; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◀

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate when a stationary obstacle is located in the same lane, e.g., a vehicle at a red traffic light or at the end of a traffic congestion.

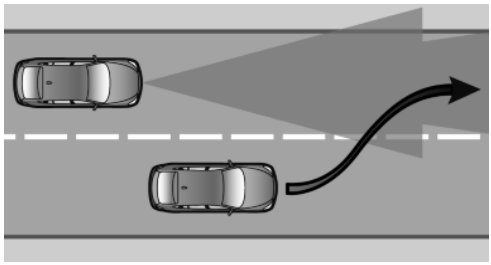
The system also does not respond to:

- Pedestrians or similarly slow road users.
- Red traffic lights.
- Stationary objects.
- Cross traffic.
- Approaching traffic.

No warnings

A warning may not be issued when approaching a stationary or very slow-moving obstacle. You must react yourself; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

Swerving vehicles

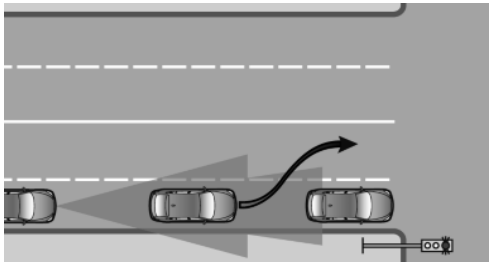


A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

Swerving vehicles

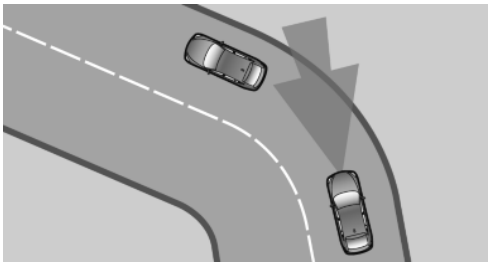
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. This also applies to major speed differences to vehicles driving ahead of you, e.g., when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if necessary. You must react yourself; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

Unexpected lane change



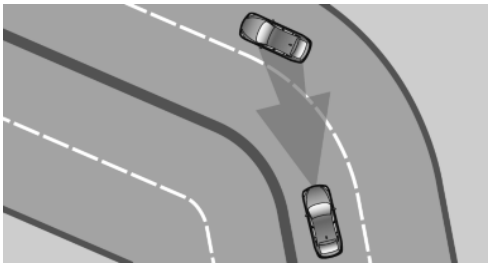
If a vehicle ahead of you unexpectedly moves into your lane from behind a stopped vehicle, you yourself must react, as the system does not react to stopped vehicles.

Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly in the curve, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

In tight curves, situations may result due to the restricted detection range of the system in which a vehicle driving ahead of you may not be detected at all, or not until after a considerable delay.



When approaching a curve, the system may react briefly to the vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. Any deceleration of the vehicle by the system can be compensated for by briefly accelerating. After the accelerator pedal is released, the system becomes active again and independently controls the speed.

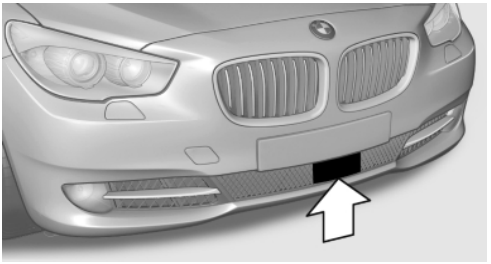
Driving away

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive away automatically, e.g., on steep inclines or behind bumps in the road.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Radar sensor

Position



Radar sensor

Dirty or covered sensor

A dirty or covered sensor may hinder the detection of vehicles.

- If necessary, clean the radar sensor. Remove layers of snow and ice carefully
- Do not cover the view field of the radar sensor.

Malfunction

The system cannot be activated if the sensor is not aligned correctly. This may be caused by damage incurred during parking, for example.

A message is displayed if the system fails.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- OAYARS3-A

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Collision warning with braking function*

The concept

The system issues a two-phase warning of a danger of collision at speeds above approx. 10 mph/15 km/h.

The collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

It responds to stationary or moving objects that are within the detection range of the radar system.

When the vehicle is intentionally brought into contact with an object, the collision warning is delayed to avoid false warnings.

Warning stages

Prewarning

This warning is issued, for example, when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Acute warning with braking function

Warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a relatively high differential speed.

The acute warning prompts the driver to intervene and, if there is the danger of a collision, is accompanied by a braking intervention.

The braking intervention is executed with limited braking force and for a brief period only. The intervention cannot bring the vehicle to a complete standstill.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 101, is switched on.

Adapting your speed and driving style

The acute warning does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her

driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.◂

The braking intervention can be interrupted by pressing on the accelerator or by actively moving the steering wheel.

When towing or tow-starting the vehicle, switch off the collision warning with the braking function to prevent accidental interventions.

The braking function is deactivated if the DSC Dynamic Stability Control or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is deactivated.

Switching the warning function on/off

Press the button

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Configuring the prewarning

After the warning function is switched on, the following can be set via the iDrive:

- The prewarning can be switched on/off.
- The time of the prewarning can be set.

These settings have no effect on the time of the warning from the Active Cruise Control* that prompts the driver to intervene or brake.

Display

The collision warning can be issued in the instrument cluster, in the Head-up Display* and acoustically.

Instrument cluster

The vehicle lights up in red: prewarning

The vehicle flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning

You are requested to intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

Adapting your speed and driving style

The display does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.◂

System limits

Be alert

Due to system limitations, warnings may be not be issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◂

Detection range

The detection capacity of the radar sensor and the collision warning has limitations.

This may result in the warning not being issued or being issued late.

For example, the following situations may not be detected:

- Slow moving objects when you approach them at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of your vehicle.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- Pedestrians.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the radar sensor is dirty or covered.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Prewarning sensitivity

If the prewarning setting is too sensitive, there may be an excess of false warnings.

Cruise control

The concept

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

The system brakes on downhill gradients if engine braking action is insufficient.

Unfavorable conditions

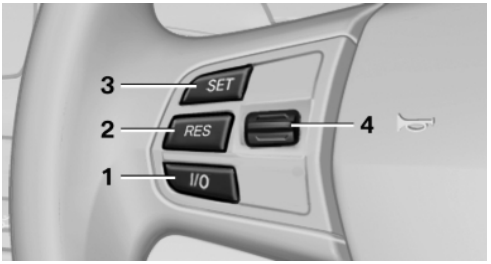
Do not use the system if unfavorable conditions make it impossible to drive at a constant speed, for instance:

- On curvy roads.
- In heavy traffic.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.

Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.◄

Controls

Buttons at a glance



1 System on/off, interrupt
2 Resume speed
3 Store speed*
4 Store, maintain/change speed

Switching on

I/O Press the button on the steering wheel.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control can be used.

When the speed limit is switched on, DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 101, is switched on as well, if necessary.

Switching off

Deactivated or interrupted system

If the system is deactivated or interrupted, actively intervene by braking and, if necessary, with evasive maneuvers; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

I/O Press the button.

- If active: press twice.
- If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting

I/O When active, press the button.

The system is automatically interrupted if:

- The brakes are applied.
- Transmission position D is disengaged.
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- DSC is actively controlling stability.

Maintaining/storing the current speed

SET Press the button.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

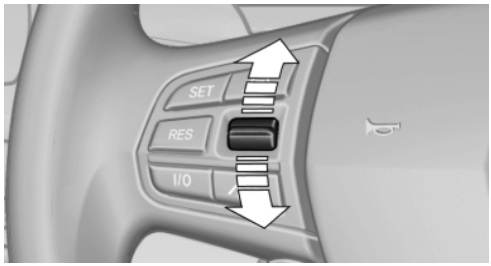
It is displayed in the speedometer and briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, Displays in the speedometer, refer to page 115.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Change, maintain speed

Adapting the desired speed

Adapt the desired speed to the road conditions and be ready to brake at all times; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed if the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/ 1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator. After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

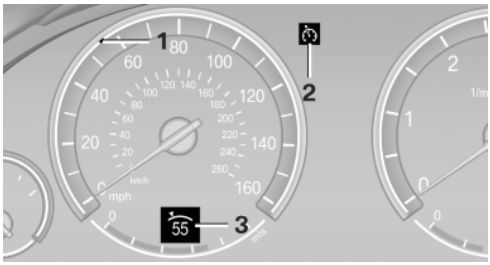
The rocker switch can be pressed while interrupted to maintain and store the current speed.

Resuming the desired speed

RES Press the button.

The stored speed is reached and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster



1 Display of desired speed

2 Indicator lamp

3 Brief status display

Desired speed

Display in the speedometer:

- The marking lights up in green: the system is active.
- The marking lights up in orange: the system has been interrupted.
- The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

Brief status display

Brief display in the speedometer:

Selected desired speed

If --- appears briefly, conditions may not be adequate to operate the system.

PDC Park Distance Control*

The concept

In addition to the PDC Park Distance Control, the backup camera*, refer to page 120, can be switched on.

PDC supports you when parking. Objects that you are approaching slowly in front of* or behind your vehicle are indicated with:

- Signal tones.
- Visual display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Measurement

Measurements are made by ultrasound sensors in the bumpers.

The range is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given:

- By the front* sensors and two rear corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm.
- By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/ 1.50 m.

System limits

Check the traffic situation as well

PDC cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation. Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside of the PDC detection range.

Loud noises from outside and inside the vehicle may prevent you from hearing the PDC's signal tone.◂

Avoid driving quickly with PDC

Avoid approaching an object quickly.

Avoid driving away quickly while PDC is not yet active.

For technical reasons, the system may otherwise be too late in issuing a warning.◂

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects can reach the physical limits of ultrasonic measurement, for instance:

- With tow bars and trailer hitches.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With low objects.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

High, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected.

False warnings

PDC may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- When sensors are very dirty or covered in ice.
- When sensors are covered in snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, e.g., in underground garages.
- In heavy exhaust.
- Due to other ultrasound sources, e.g., sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off and the LED goes out:

- After approx. 160 ft/50 m when driving forward.
- Above approx. 22 mph/36 km/h when driving forward.

Switch on the system again if necessary.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

Signal tones

When approaching an object, an intermittent tone is sounded that indicates the position of the object. For example, if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object becomes, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 12 in/30 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

If objects are located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- If the vehicle stops in front of an object that is detected by only one of the corner sensors.
- If moving parallel to a wall.

The signal tone is switched off:

- When the vehicle moves away from an object by more than approx. 4 in/10 cm.
- When transmission position P is engaged.

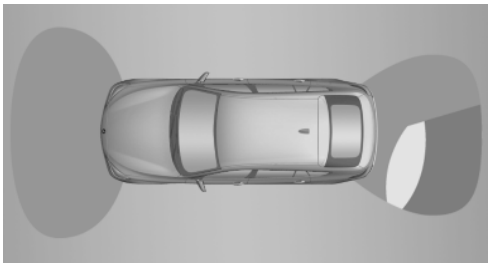
Volume

You can set the volume of the PDC signal tone, refer to page 173.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are displayed on the Control Display before a signal tone sounds.



A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the screen mask can also be turned by 90°.

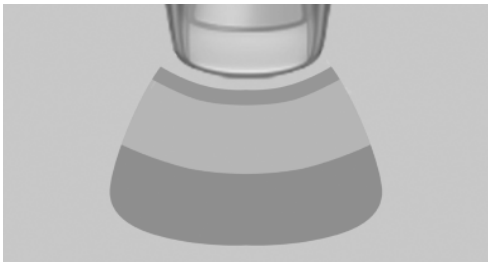
If the backup camera image was selected last, it again appears on the display. To switch to PDC:

1. "Rear view camera" Select the symbol on the Control Display.
2. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Zoom view*

On the left part of the display screen, the vehicle is shown enlarged.



- Transmission position D engaged: front area of the vehicle.
- Transmission position R engaged: rear area of the vehicle.

Display on the Control Display

Switching on the backup camera via the iDrive

With PDC activated:

1. "Rear view camera" Select the symbol.

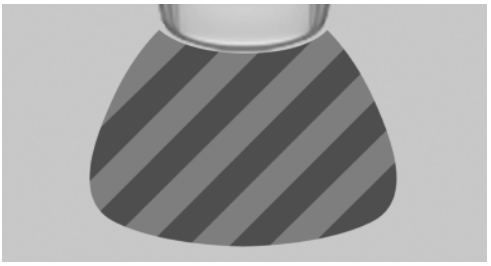
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

2. Press the controller.

The backup camera image is displayed. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Malfunction

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the screen mask can also be turned by 90°.



A Check Control message, refer to page 83, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

On the Control Display, the areas in front of and behind the vehicle are shaded. PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

To ensure full operability:

- Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.

Surround View*

The concept

Surround View includes the following systems:

- Backup camera, refer to page 120
- Side View, refer to page 122.
- Top View, refer to page 118.

It assists the driver when parking, maneuvering and on blind driveways and intersections.

Top View*

The concept

Top View assists you in parking and maneuvering. The area around the doors and the road area around the vehicle are shown on the Control Display for this purpose.

Capturing the image

The image is captured by two cameras integrated in the exterior mirrors and by the backup camera.

The range equals:

- approx. 10 ft/3 m to the side.
- approx. 7 ft/2 m to the rear.

In this way, obstacles up to the height of the exterior mirrors are detected early.

System limits

Top View cannot be used in the following situations:

- With a door open.
- With the tailgate open.
- With an exterior mirror folded in.
- In poor light.

A Check Control message is displayed in some of these situations.

Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the cameras.◀

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

The Top View and PDC images are displayed if the system is switched on via iDrive.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off and the LED goes out:

- After approx. 160 ft/50 m when driving forward.

▷ Above approx. 22 mph/36 km/h when driving forward.

Switch on the system again if necessary.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.

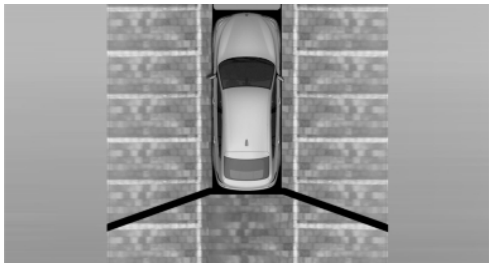
▷ Off: the LED goes out.

If Top View is displayed, switch on the backup camera via the iDrive, refer to page 119.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display.

When the distance to an object is small, a red bar is shown in front of the vehicle, as it is in the PDC display.



The display appears as soon as Top View is activated.

If the backup camera image was selected last, it again appears on the display. To switch to Top View:

1. "Rear view camera" Select the symbol on the Control Display.
2. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Display on the Control Display

Switching on the backup camera via the iDrive

With Top View switched on:

1. "Rear view camera" Select the symbol.
2. Press the controller.

The backup camera image is displayed. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness

With Top View switched on:

1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Contrast

With Top View switched on:

1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Displaying the turning circle and pathway lines

▷ The static, red turning circle line shows the space needed to the side of the vehicle when the steering wheel is turned all the way.

▷ The variable, green pathway line assists you in assessing the amount of space actually needed to the side of the vehicle.

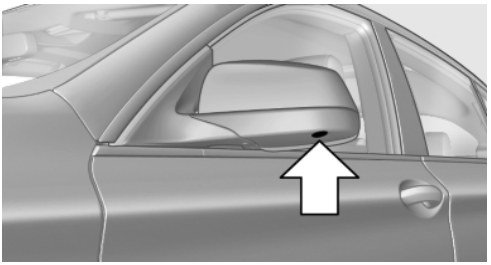
The pathway line is dependent on the current steering angle and is continuously adjusted with the steering wheel movement.

1. Select the symbol.
2. Press the controller.

Turning circle and pathway lines are displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Cameras



The objectives of the Top View cameras are located at the bottom of the exterior mirror housings. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 253.

Backup camera*

The concept

The backup camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

System limits

Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the backup camera.◀

Detection of objects

High, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the backup camera.◀

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

The backup camera image is displayed if the system was switched on via the iDrive.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off and the LED goes out:

- After approx. 33 ft/10 m when driving forward.
- After approx. 9 mph/15 km/h when driving forward.

Switch on the system again if necessary.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

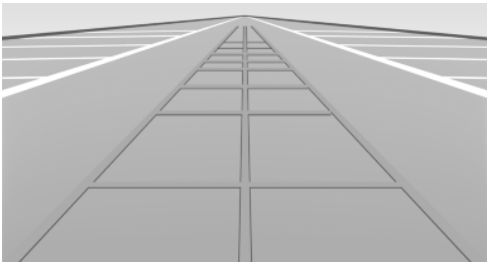
Switch on the backup camera via the iDrive, refer to page 122.

Assistance functions

Functional requirement

- The backup camera is switched on.
- The tailgate is fully closed.

Pathway lines

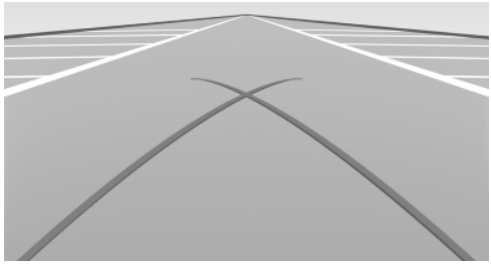


- Can be shown in the backup camera image when in transmission position R.
- Help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

▷ Are dependent on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Show the parking aid lines, refer to page 121.

Turning circle lines



▷ Can be shown in the backup camera image.

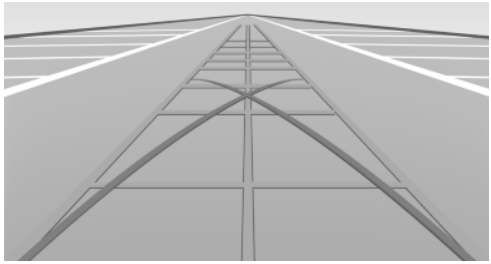
▷ Show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.

▷ Only one turning circle line is displayed when the steering wheel is turned.

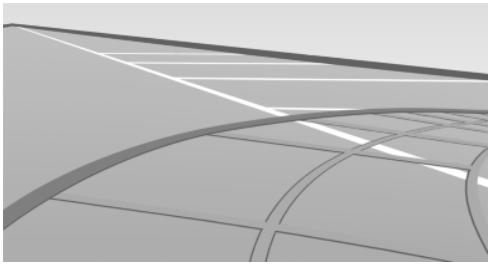
Show the parking aid lines, refer to page 121.

Parking using pathway and turning circle lines

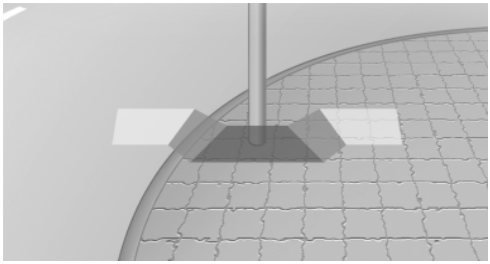
1. Position the vehicle so that the turning circle lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.



2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.



Obstacle marking



▷ Spatially-shaped markings can be shown in the backup camera image.

Their colored steps match the markings of the PDC. This simplifies estimation of the distance to the object shown.

Activating the assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Showing the parking aid lines

1. "Parking aid lines" Select the symbol.
2. Press the controller.

Pathway and turning circle lines are displayed.

Showing the obstacle marking

1. "Obstacle marking" Select the symbol.
2. Press the controller.

Spatially-shaped markings are displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Display on the Control Display

Switching on the backup camera via the iDrive

With PDC activated:

1. "Rear view camera" Select the symbol.
2. Press the controller.

The backup camera image is displayed. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness

With the backup camera switched on:

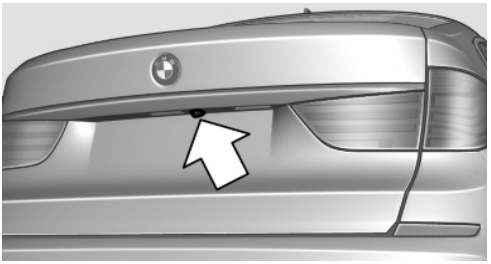
1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Contrast

With the backup camera switched on:

1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 253.

Side View*

The concept

Side View provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections. Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. To improve visibility, two cameras in the front of the vehicle record the traffic situation on each side.

System limits

The cameras capture a maximum range of 330 ft/100 m.

Display

The images from both cameras are shown simultaneously on the Control Display.

Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle on blind driveways and intersections with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the Side View cameras.◀

Switching off automatically

System switches off: above approx. 9 mph/ 15 km/h.

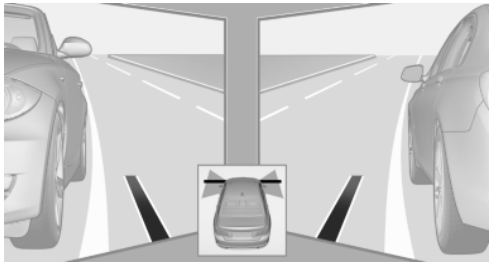
Switch on the system again if necessary.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

Display on the Control Display

The traffic area to the left and right is displayed on the Control Display.



Guidelines at the bottom of the image show the position of the front of the vehicle.

Brightness

With the Side View switched on:

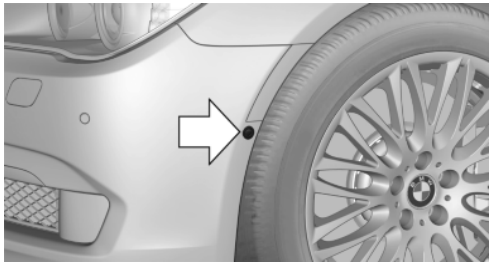
1. ☼ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Contrast

With the Side View switched on:

1. ◐ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Cameras



The two camera lenses are located on the sides of the bumper.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 253.

Night Vision with pedestrian detection*

The concept

Night Vision with pedestrian detection is a night vision system.

An infrared camera records the area in front of the vehicle and displays the image on the Control Display.

The picture is a heat image. The system has an integrated pedestrian detection function that detects pedestrians and cyclists. Warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings are detected by the system.

Personal responsibility

Night Vision cannot replace the driver's personal judgment of the visibility conditions and the traffic situation. The view ahead and the actual visibility conditions must always be the basis on which the vehicle speed is adjusted; otherwise, there is a risk to road safety.◂

Heat image

The image shows the heat radiated by objects in the field of view of the camera.

Warm objects have a light appearance and cold objects, a dark appearance.

The ability to detect an object depends on the temperature difference between the object and the background and on the level of heat radiation emitted by the object. Objects that are similar in temperature to the environment or that radiate very little heat are difficult to detect.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Pedestrian detection

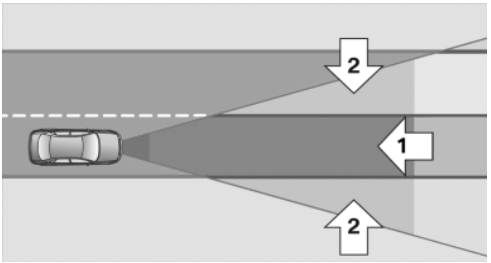
Warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings are detected by the system.

People detected by the system are displayed with a slight yellow hue.

Under good ambient conditions, the pedestrian detection system operates within a range of approx. 50 ft/15 m to approx. 330 ft/100 m.

Warning of people in danger

If the system detects a person in a defined area in front of the vehicle and if a collision with this person is imminent, a warning symbol appears in the Control Display and Head-up Display*.



The warning area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas.

- Central area 1 directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area 2 to the right and left.

The entire area moves along with the vehicle in the direction of the steering angle and changes with the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the area becomes longer and wider, for example.

This symbol is displayed when a person is detected in the central area, arrow 1, immediately in front of the vehicle.

This symbol is displayed when a person detected in the extended area, arrow 2, is moving from the right or left to the central area.

The symbols in the Head-up Display* correspond to the symbols in the Control Display. For people located in the central area, the distance to the person is indicated by the size of the symbol.

Although both the shape and the heat radiation are analyzed, false warnings cannot be ruled out.

System limits

Animals are not detected by the pedestrian detection function, even if they are clearly visible in the image.

System operation is limited in situations such as the following:

- On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- When the camera is dirty or the protective glass is damaged.
- In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- At very high external temperatures.

Pedestrian detection

Limited pedestrian detection:

- When people are fully or partially covered, especially when their heads are covered.
- When people are not in an upright position, e.g., when lying down.
- Cyclists on unconventional bicycles (e.g., recumbent bicycles).

▷ After physical damage to the system, e.g., after an accident.

Activation/deactivation

Press the button.

Display

Heat image

For safety reasons, when driving at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h and in low ambient light, the image is only displayed when the low beams are switched on.

A still image is displayed at regular intervals for a fraction of a second.

Night Vision with pedestrian detection is not available on the rear screen.

Pedestrian detection

Environmental influences can limit the availability of pedestrian detection. If pedestrian detection is not available, a symbol is displayed in the heat image.

This symbol disappears when the function becomes available again.

The pedestrian detection and warning system only operates in darkness and only when a heat image is displayed.

Adjustments via the iDrive

With Night Vision switched on:

1. Activate Night Vision with pedestrian detection.
2. Press the controller.
3. Open the desired menu item.
   - ▷ 1: "Brightness"
   - ▷ 2: "Contrast"
   - ▷ 3: "Pedestrian detection"

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Camera

Rain, dirt, snow, or ice can impair camera operation.

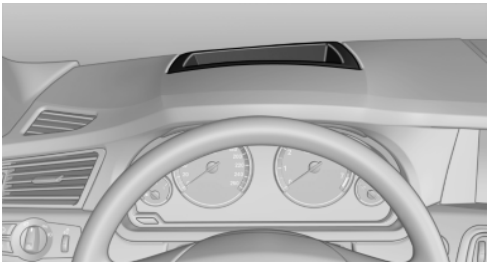
The camera is automatically heated when the external temperatures are low.

The camera is automatically cleaned together with the headlamps.

Clean the lens, refer to page 253.

Head-up Display*

The concept



This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, e.g., the speed.

In this way, the driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

Display visibility

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by:

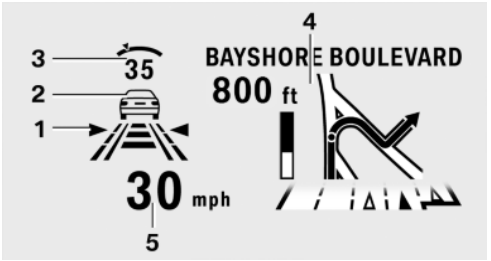
- Certain sitting positions.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, check the basic settings.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

Display



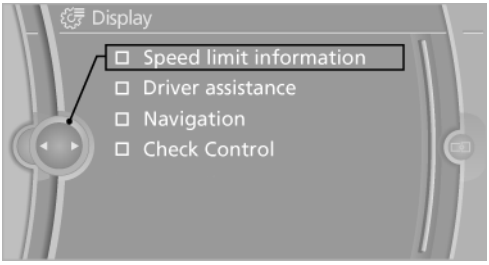
1 Lane departure warning*
2 Active Cruise Control*
3 Desired speed
4 Navigation system*
5 Speed

The collision warning* or Check Control messages are displayed briefly if needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Displayed information"

4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.



The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient light.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller.

   The brightness is adjusted.

When the low beams are switched on, the basic setting can be made using the instrument lighting, refer to page 89.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adjusting the height

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Height"
4. Turn the controller.

   The height is adjusted.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

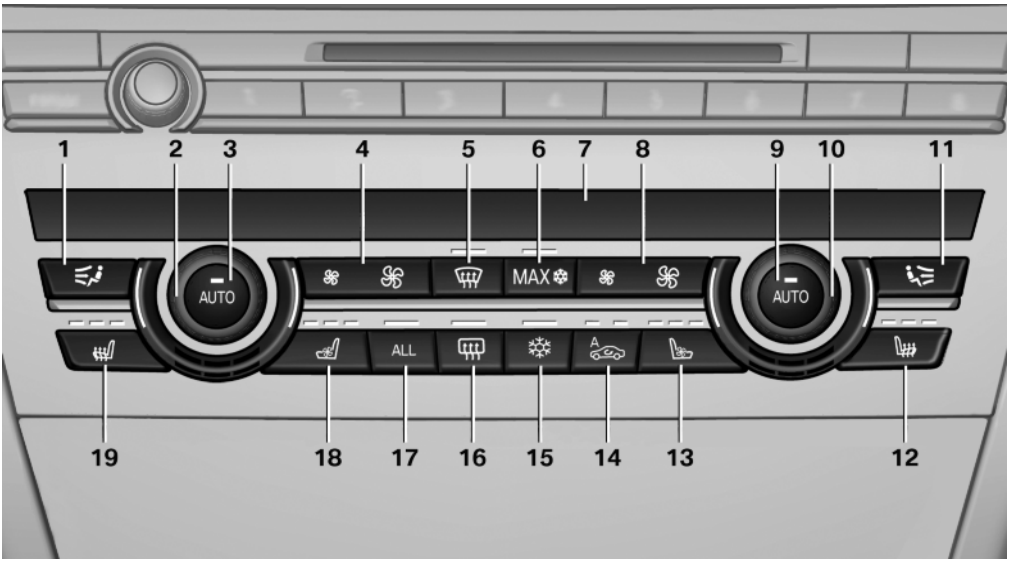
The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being displayed.

Therefore, have the special windshield replaced by a service center only.

Climate control

Automatic climate control*



1 Air distribution, left side
2 Temperature, left side
3 AUTO program, left side
4 Air volume, AUTO intensity, residual heat, left side
5 Remove ice and condensation
6 Maximum cooling
7 Display
8 Air volume, AUTO intensity, right side
9 AUTO program, right side
10 Temperature, right side
11 Air distribution, right side
12 Seat heating*, right side 50
13 Active seat ventilation*, right side 51
14 Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode
15 Cooling function
16 Rear window defroster
17 ALL program
18 Active seat ventilation*, left side 51
19 Seat heating*, left side 50

Climate control functions in detail

Manual air distribution

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and footwell.
- Footwell.
- Windows and footwell: driver's side only.
- Windows, upper body region and footwell: driver's side only.

If the windows are fogged over, press the AUTO button on the driver's side to utilize the condensation sensor.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Temperature

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Avoid rapidly switching between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

AUTO program

Press the button.

Air volume, air distribution, and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, refer to page 130, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program switched on, automatic control of the air volume and air distribution can be adjusted.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase the intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Air volume, manual

To be able to manually adjust the air volume, switch off the AUTO program first.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air volume.

The selected air volume is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Press the button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air volume can be adjusted when the program is active.

Maximum cooling

Press the button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air volume and recirculated-air mode.

Air flows out of the vents for the upper body region. Open them for this purpose.

Air is cooled as quickly as possible:

- At an external temperature of approx. 32 °F/ 0 °C.
- When the engine is running.

The air volume can be adjusted when the program is active.

Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

You can respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Press the button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.
- Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

If the windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculated-air mode and press the AUTO button on the driver's side to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow onto the windshield.

Continuous recirculated-air mode

The recirculated-air mode should not be used for an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates steadily.◀

Cooling function

The passenger compartment can only be cooled with the engine running.

Press the button.

The air is cooled and dehumidified and – depending on the temperature setting – warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 148, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Rear window defroster

Press the button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

All program

Press the button.

The current settings on the driver's side for temperature, air volume, air distribution, and AUTO program are transferred to the front passenger side and to the left and right rear*.

The program is switched off if the settings on the front passenger side and in the rear* are changed.

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the interior.

Functional requirement

- Up to 20 minutes after the engine has been switched off.
- Warm engine.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- External temperature below 77 °F/25 °C.

Switching on

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Press the right side of the button on the driver's side.

is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The interior temperature, air volume and air distribution can be adjusted with the ignition switched on.

Switching off

At the lowest fan speed, press the left side of the button on the driver's side.

on the display of the automatic climate control goes out.

Switching the system on/off

Switching off

- Complete system:

  At the lowest fan speed, press the left side of the button on the driver's side.
- On the front passenger side:

  At the lowest fan speed, press the left side of the button on the front passenger side.

Switching on

Press any button.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

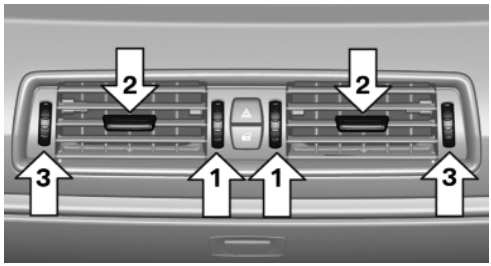
The activated-charcoal filter removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

This combined filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance of your vehicle.

More information can be found in the service requirements display, refer to page 82.

Ventilation

Front ventilation



- Thumb wheels* for adjusting the temperature, arrows 1.

  Toward blue: colder.

  Toward red: warmer.
- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 2.
- Thumb wheels for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrows 3.

Ventilation levels*

- Draft-free ventilation:

  Thumb wheel, arrow 3, in level : the air current is fanned out.
- Maximum air volume:

  Thumb wheel, arrow 3, in level : the air is partially fanned out and partially bundled. This maximizes the air supply.
- Direct ventilation:

  Thumb wheel, arrow 3, in level → : the air is bundled and can be directed to a specific point.

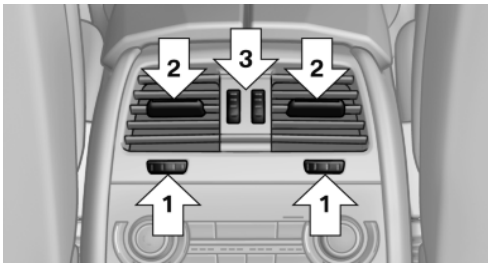
Adjusting the ventilation

- Ventilation for cooling:

  Adjust the vent to direct the air in your direction, e.g., if the vehicle interior is hot from the sun.
- Draft-free ventilation:

  Adjust the vent to let the air flow past you.

Ventilation in rear, center

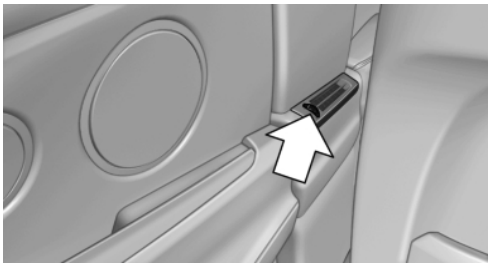


- Thumb wheels* for adjusting the temperature, arrows 1.

  Toward blue: colder.

  Toward red: warmer.
- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 2.
- Thumb wheels for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrows 3.

Lateral ventilation*



Thumb wheel for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrow.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Rear automatic climate control*

At a glance

1 Temperature
2 AUTO program
3 Vent settings
4 Air volume, AUTO intensity
5 Display
6 Maximum cooling
7 Seat heating* 53
8 Active seat ventilation* 53

Switching the rear automatic climate control on/off

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Rear climate control"

The rear automatic climate control is not operational if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting or defogging the windows is active.

AUTO program

Press the button.

Air volume, air distribution, and temperature are controlled automatically:

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the footwell.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program switched on, automatic control of the air volume and air distribution can be adjusted.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase the intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Temperature

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Avoid rapidly switching between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Manual air distribution

The air distribution can be adjusted to individual needs.

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and footwell.
- Footwell.

Air volume, manual

To be able to manually adjust the air volume, switch off the AUTO program first.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air volume.

The selected air volume is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Switching the system on/off

Switching off

At the lowest fan speed, press the left side of the button on the driver's side.

Switching on

Press any button.

Maximum cooling

Press the button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air volume and recirculated-air mode.

Air flows out of the vents for the upper body region. Open them for this purpose.

Air is cooled as quickly as possible:

- ▷ At an external temperature of approx. 32 °F/ 0 °C.
- ▷ When the engine is running.

Parked-car ventilation

The concept

The parked-car ventilation ventilates the vehicle interior and lowers its temperature, if necessary.

The system can be switched on and off directly or by using two preset switch-on times. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

They can be operated via iDrive.

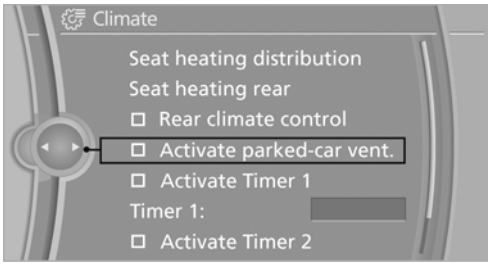
Parked-car ventilation

Using the preset switch-on time or when operated directly: any external temperature.

Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate parked-car vent."



The system is switched on. The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes.

The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Preselecting the switch-on time

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"
4. Enter the desired time.
5. Press the controller to adopt the setting.

Activating the switch-on time

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate Timer 1" or "Activate Timer 2"

The activation time is activated. The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up.

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.

The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to reactivated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Interior equipment

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

This system can replace up to three different hand-held transmitters for various types of remote-controlled equipment, such as garage doors or lighting systems.

The hand-held transmitter signal can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons.

The corresponding device can then be operated using the programmed memory button.

The LED indicates that a signal is being transmitted.

When selling the vehicle, delete the stored programs for security reasons.

During programming

During programming and before activating a device using the universal remote control, ensure that there are no people, animals, or objects in the range of movement of the remote-controlled device; otherwise, there is a risk of injury or damage.

Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◄

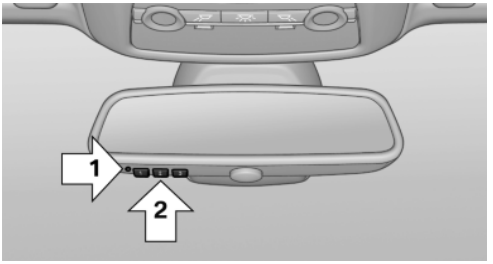
Compatibility

If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the hand-held transmitter, the remote-controlled device is generally compatible with the universal remote control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- Your service center.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

Programming



- LED, arrow 1.
- Memory buttons, arrow 2.

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

   Press both outer buttons 1 and 3 for approx. 20 seconds until the LED flashes.

   All programs of the three memory buttons, arrow 2, are cleared.
3. Hold the hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 2 to 8 in/5 to 20 cm from the memory buttons.
4. Simultaneously press the transmit button of the hand-held transmitter and the memory button of the universal remote control.

   The LED flashes slowly.
5. Release both buttons when the LED flashes rapidly.

   If the LED does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step.

The device can be operated using the memory button with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Malfunction

If the device cannot be used after repeated attempts at programming, please check whether the hand-held transmitter is equipped with an alternating code system.

To do so:

- ▷ Read the instructions of the hand-held transmitter.
- ▷ Press the memory button of the universal remote control for an extended period.

If the LED flashes rapidly for a brief period and then lights up continuously for approx. 2 seconds, the hand-held transmitter is equipped with an alternating code system.

In this case, program the memory buttons as described under Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

Please obtain information on synchronizing the device in the operating manual of the device being set up.

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the universal remote control as described above under Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Press and hold the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror for approx. 5 seconds until the device to be adjusted is activated.

   If the device does not become activated, press and hold the button and watch the LED:

   - ▷ If the LED lights up continuously, the programming is completed. The device should become activated when the button is pressed briefly.
   - ▷ If the LED flashes for approx. 2 seconds and then lights up continuously, continue the programming procedure beginning with step 4.
4. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g., on the drive.
5. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
6. Press the programmed memory button of the universal remote control three times.

The device can be operated when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Reassigning individual programs

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Hold the hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 2 to 8 in/5 to 20 cm from the memory buttons.
3. Press the memory button of the universal remote control.
4. If the LED flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the transmit button on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons when the LED flashes rapidly.

   If the LED does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step.

Deleting all stored programs

Press the left and right memory buttons for approx. 20 seconds until the LED flashes rapidly.

All stored programs are deleted.

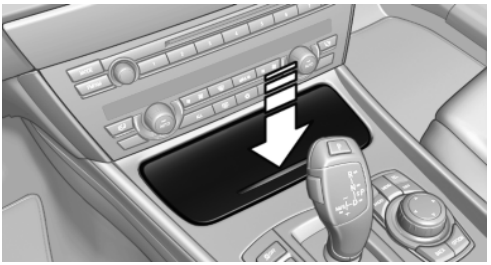
The programs cannot be deleted individually.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Ashtray/cigarette lighter*

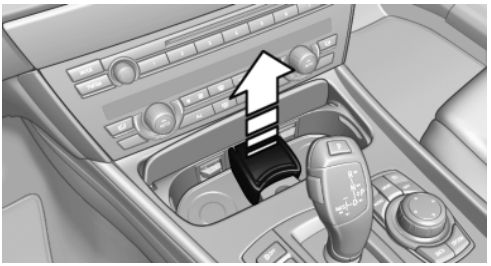
Front

Opening



Press on the cover.

Emptying



Take out the insert.

Lighter

Push in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

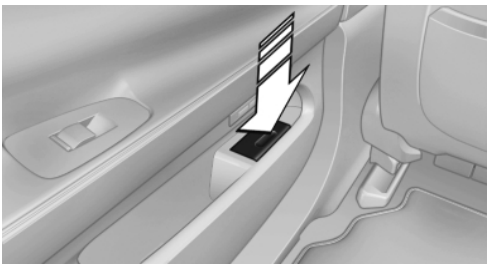
Danger of burns

Only hold the hot lighter by its head; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.

Switch off the ignition and take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children cannot use the lighter and burn themselves.◄

Rear

Opening



Press on the cover.

Emptying

Take out the insert.

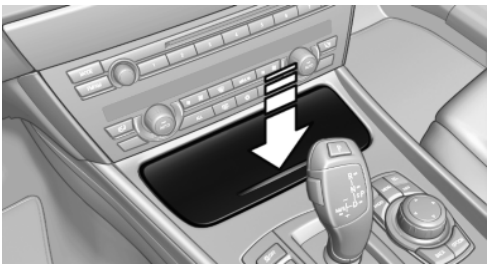
Connecting electrical devices

Sockets

The lighter socket can be used for electrical devices up to approx. 200 watts with 12 volts with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Front center console



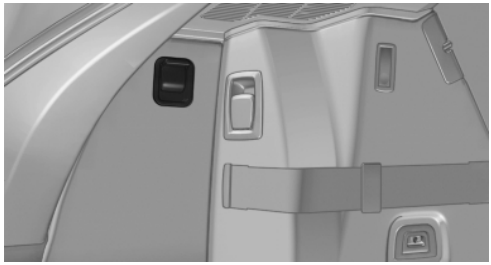
Press on the cover.

Remove the cover or cigarette lighter*.

Rear center console

Remove the cover.

In the trunk



To access the socket: fold open the cover.

Trunk

Trunk cover

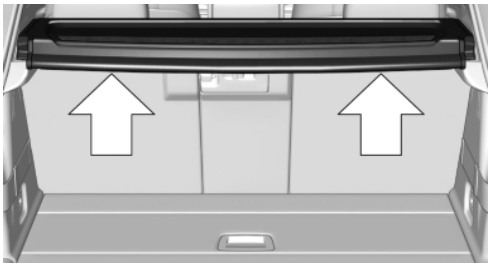
Note

Do not deposit heavy objects

Do not deposit heavy or hard objects on the trunk cover. Otherwise, they could endanger occupants during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example.◂

Removing

To load bulky luggage, the cover can be removed.

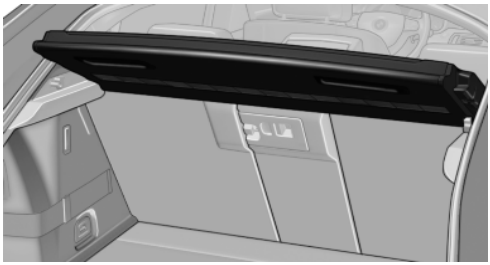


1. Place your hands into the two recessed grips on the bottom of the cover.
2. Push up the cover.

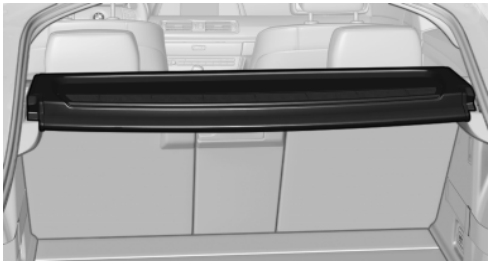
The cover can be stowed in the rear compartment in the trunk, refer to page 143.

Installing

1. Insert the trunk cover into the two front retaining pins.



2. Fold down the cover until it engages.



Through-loading system

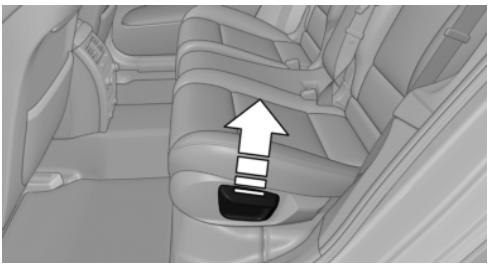
General information

The trunk can be expanded by folding down the trunk partition and the rear seat backrest.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

The trunk partition and the rear backrest are subdivided at a ratio of 40–20–40. You can also fold down the left and right sides separately.

Foldable rear backrests, manual



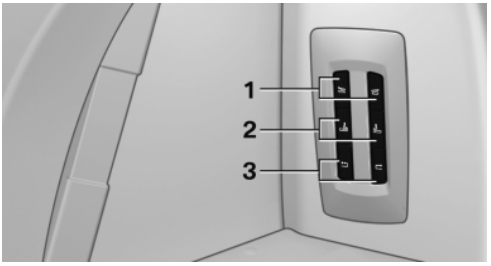
Pull the lever. The backrest folds forward.

Fold the backrest back; the backrest engages in an upright position. Pull the lever again to adjust the backrest to the desired angle.

Locking the backrests

Before letting passengers ride in the rear, engage the seat backrests, locking them in place. Otherwise, there is the danger of an accident due to unexpected seat movement.◄

Foldable rear backrests, powered*



1 Fold backrest forward

2 Loading position

3 Basic position

Fold backrest forward

Move the front seats to an upright position

Before folding down the rear backrests, ensure that the front seats are moved forward slightly and are in an upright position. Otherwise, the head restraint and screen could be damaged.◄

Press the button until the backrest is folded all the way forward.

Folding the backrest back

Before anyone can be transported in the rear:

1. Put the rear seat backrests into their standard position.
2. For the best possible individual seat position, adjust the inclination of the rear seat backrest if necessary.

Adjust the standard position of the rear seat backrest

Before transporting anyone in the rear and adjusting the individual seat position, adjust the standard position of the rear seat backrests. Otherwise, the restraining effect of the seats can be limited in an accident because the backrest position is set too steep.◄

Loading position

Press the button. The seat moves forward and the backrest moves to the basic position. Comfortable seating is still possible although knee clearance is reduced.

Basic position

Press and hold the button until the seat stops automatically in its basic position.

Operation of the rear backrest was deactivated

After a brief period, operation of the rear backrest is deactivated to save battery power.

To reactivate operation:

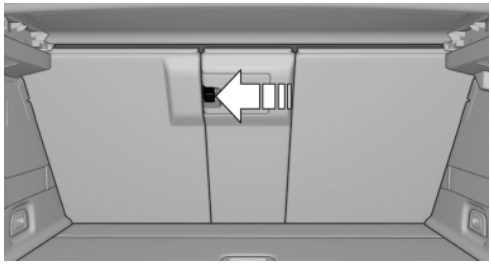
- ▷ Open or close a door or the tailgate.
- ▷ Press a button on the remote control.
- ▷ Press the Start/Stop button.

Folding down the trunk partition

1. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.

2. To release the trunk partition, pull the corresponding lever in the trunk. The trunk partition folds forward.

Unlocking the middle trunk partition



Press the opener toward the left.

Closing the trunk partition

Folding back and engaging the trunk partition.

Danger of pinching

Make sure that the path of the cargo cover is clear when folding it back up; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Ensure that the lock is securely engaged

When folding back the backrest, be sure that it locks in place securely. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the passenger compartment during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants.◄

Loading position

To expand the trunk, the cargo cover can be moved into a vertical position.

1. Move the rear backrest to the loading position, refer to page 138.
2. To release the cargo cover, pull both levers in the trunk. The cargo cover folds into an upright position and rests against the rear backrest.

Repositioning

Fold back the cargo cover and snap into place

Ski and snowboard bag*

General information

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the trunk.

Follow the installation and operation instructions included in the protective jacket.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Storage compartments

Storage compartments

The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:

- Glove compartment on the driver's and front passenger side, refer to page 140.
- Storage compartment in the center console, refer to page 142.
- Storage compartment in the center armrest, refer to page 141, in the front and rear.
- Compartments in the doors.
- Pockets on the backrests of the front seats*.
- Net in the front passenger footwell.

No loose objects in the passenger compartment

Do not stow any objects in the passenger compartment without securing them; otherwise, they may present a danger to occupants for instance during braking and avoidance maneuvers.◄

Glove compartment

Front passenger side

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

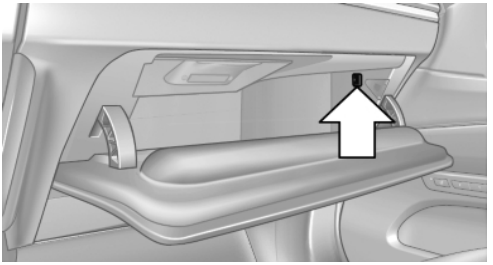
Close the glove compartment again immediately

Close the glove compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents.◄

Closing

Fold up the cover.

USB interface for data transfer



Connection for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g.:

- Personal Profile settings, refer to page 33.
- Music collection, refer to page 187.

Observe the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB interface.
- Do not connect USB hard drives.
- Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

Driver's side

Opening

Pull the handle.

Close the glove compartment again immediately

Close the glove compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents.◂

Closing

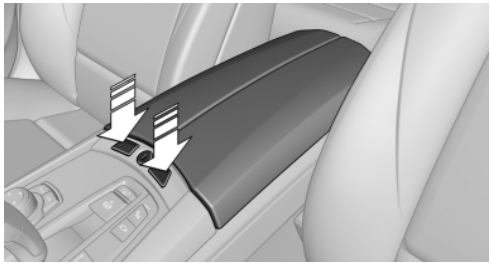
Fold up the cover.

Center armrest

Front

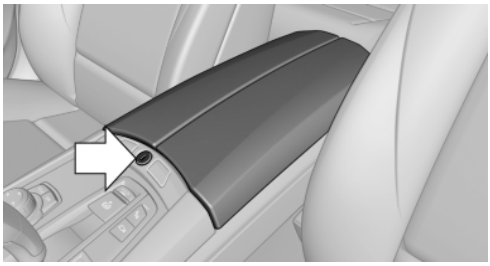
A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the front seats.

Opening



Press the buttons next to the lock.

Locking the storage compartment

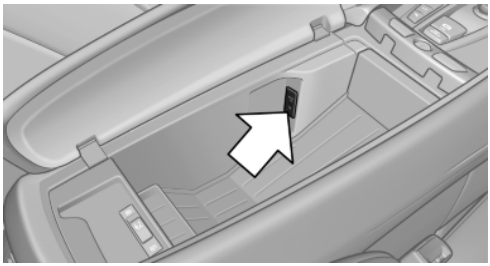


The storage compartment in the armrest can be locked with a key to separately secure the tailgate, refer to page 41, for example.

After the storage compartment is locked, the remote control can be handed out without the integrated key, refer to page 32, for instance at a hotel.

This prevents access to the storage compartment and to the trunk.

Connection for an external audio device



This can be used to connect an external audio device, such as a CD or MP3 player.

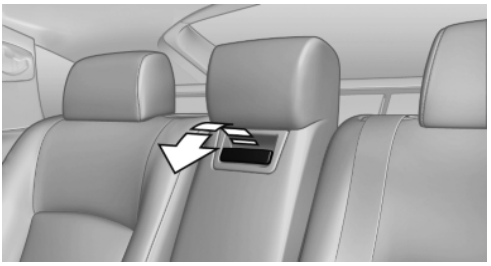
- AUX-IN port, refer to page 192.
- USB audio interface*, refer to page 193.

Rear

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Folding down

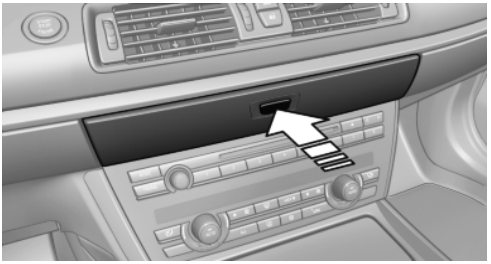


Pull on the opener and fold the armrest forward.

Opening

Storage compartment in the rear center armrest.

Storage compartment in the center console



To open: press the button.

Cupholders

Notes

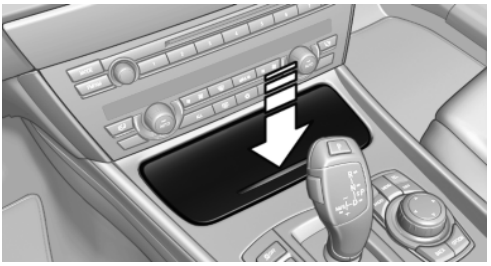
Shatter-proof containers and no hot drinks

Use light and shatter-proof containers and do not transport hot drinks. Otherwise, there is the increased danger of injury in an accident.◄

Unsuitable containers

Do not forcefully push unsuitable containers into the cupholders. This may result in damage.◄

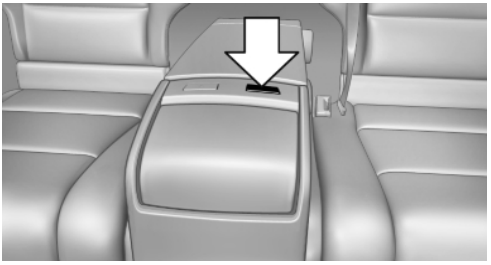
Front



To open: press on the cover.

Rear

In the front center armrest.



To open: press the button.

Clothes hooks

The clothes hooks are located next to the grab handles in the rear and on the door pillar in the rear.

Do not obstruct view

When suspending clothing from the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision.◄

No heavy objects

Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks; otherwise, they may present a danger to passengers during braking and evasive maneuvers.◄

Storage compartments in the trunk

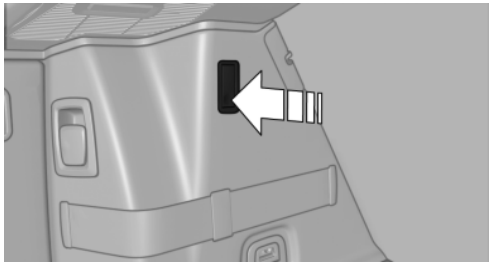
Retaining straps

Retaining straps on the left* and right side trim for fastening small objects.

Multi-function hook

There are two multi-function hooks on the trunk walls.

1. Open the holder by pressing on the button.



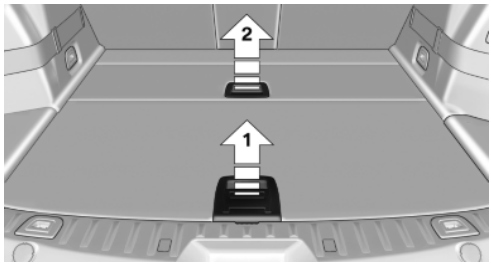
2. Press the bag handle into the holder from above.

Light and suitable objects only

Only hang light bags or suitable objects from the holders. Otherwise, there is a danger of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers.

Only transport heavy luggage in the trunk if it has been appropriately secured.◄

Storage compartments in the floor



Rear compartment

The trunk cover, refer to page 137, can be stowed in the rear compartment.

To open the cover, pull upward on the handle, arrow 1.

To close the cover, press downward until it locks.

You can fix the cover in an upright position, if needed. To do so, unhook the right-hand retaining strap and hook it into the rear of the cover.

Do not stow heavy objects

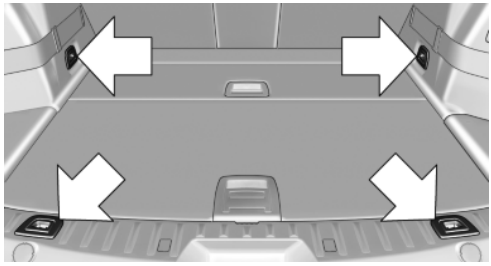
Only stow light objects in the rear compartment; otherwise, damage may occur.◄

Front compartment

To open, reach into the recess and raise the handle, arrow 2.

The cover can be completely removed.

Lashing eyes



To secure cargo, refer to page 149, with nets or draw straps, the trunk is fitted with lashing eyes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Driving tips

This chapter provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating modes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Things to remember when driving

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to be broken in to adjust to each other.

The following instructions will help achieve a long vehicle life and good economy.

Engine and differential

Always obey the official speed limit.

Up to approx. 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds but do not exceed:

- In gasoline engines, 4,500 rpm or 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kickdown mode for the initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial breaking-in period.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive conservatively during this breaking-in period.

Following part replacement

The same breaking in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Drive with the tailgate closed

Only operate the vehicle with the tailgate closed; otherwise, exhaust fumes could enter the passenger compartment.◄

If the vehicle must be driven with the tailgate open:

1. Close all windows and the glass sunroof*.
2. Greatly increase the air volume of the automatic climate control system.

Hot exhaust system

Hot exhaust system

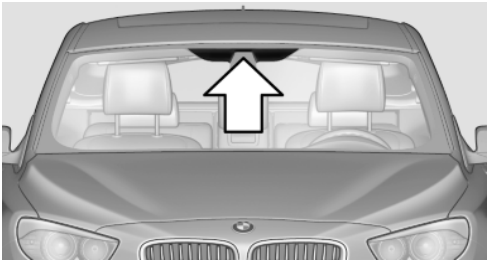
High temperatures are generated in the exhaust system.

Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking, take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious personal injury as well as property damage.

Do not touch hot exhaust pipes; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.◄

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Climate control windshield



The marked area is not covered with a heat-reflective coating.

Use this area for garage door openers, devices for electronic toll collection, etc.

Climate control laminated tinted safety glass

The vehicle glass provides full protection against the harmful effects of UV radiation on the skin.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

It is advised that you do not use mobile communication devices, e.g., mobile phones, inside the vehicle without connecting them directly to the external antenna. Otherwise, the vehicle electronics and mobile communication devices can interfere with each other. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation generated during transmission will be discharged from the vehicle interior.◂

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce your speed to prevent hydroplaning.◂

Driving through water

Drive though calm water only if it is not deeper than 9.8 inches/25 cm and at this height, no faster than walking speed, up to 6 mph/10 km/h.

Adhere to water depth and speed limitations

Do not exceed this water depth and walking speed; otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◂

Braking safely

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations when this is necessary.

The vehicle maintains steering responsiveness. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated in this process helps dry the brake discs and pads.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat, resulting in a reduction in the brake system efficiency.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down in the manual mode of the automatic transmission, refer to page 72.

Avoid load on the brakes

Avoid placing excessive load on the brake system. Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◄

Do not drive in neutral

Do not drive in neutral or with the engine stopped, as doing so disables engine braking. In addition, steering and brake assist is unavailable with the engine stopped.◄

No objects in the area around the pedals

Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area of pedal movement and impair pedal operation.◄

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.

Corrosion occurs when the minimum pressure that must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the discs is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake discs, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that generally cannot be corrected.

Condensation under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Therefore, traces of condensed water under the vehicle are normal.

Loading

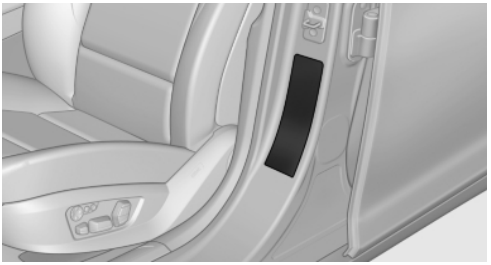
Overloading the vehicle

To avoid exceeding the approved carrying capacity of the tires, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. This could result in a sudden loss of tire inflation pressure.◄

No fluids in the trunk

Make sure that fluids do not leak into the trunk; otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged.◄

Determining the load limit



1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:
   - The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

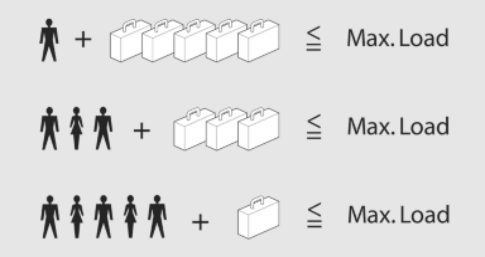
   For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs: 1,400 lbs minus 750 lbs = 650 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transfered to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

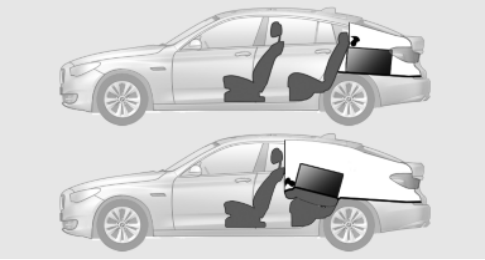
Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

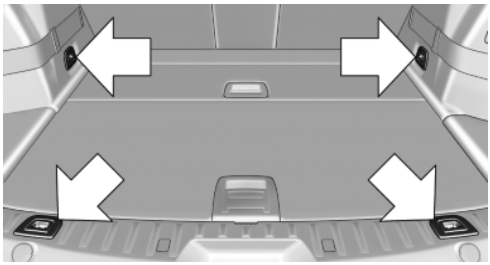
The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing cargo



- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward and as low as possible, ideally directly behind the trunk partition.
- Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- Cover sharp edges and corners.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests, including the trunk partition, to stow cargo.

Securing cargo



- Smaller and lighter items: secure with retaining straps, a trunk net* or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy objects: secure with cargo straps*.

  Cargo straps can be attached to four lashing eyes located in the trunk.

Securing cargo

Always position and secure the cargo as described above; otherwise, it can endanger the car's occupants if sudden braking or swerving becomes necessary.

Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car; otherwise, they could be thrown around as a result of hard braking, sudden swerves, etc., and endanger the occupants.◀

Roof-mounted luggage rack

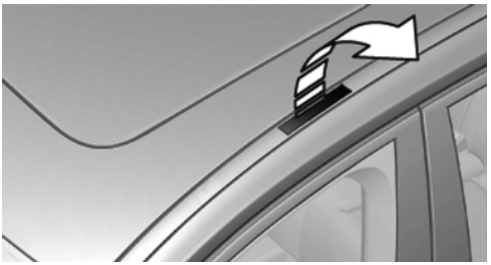
Special rack system as optional accessory

A special rack system is available as an optional accessory.

Follow the directions given in the installation instructions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Anchorage points



Fold the cover outward.

Mounting

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for raising and opening the glass sunroof*.

Magnetic roof-mounted luggage rack

Because of the aluminum roof, magnetic roof-mounted luggage racks cannot be mounted.

Loading

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight, refer to page 258.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not be too large in area.
- Always load the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Fasten roof-mounted cargo correctly and securely.
- Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Saving fuel

General information

Your vehicle contains advanced technology for the reduction of fuel consumption and emissions.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance, refer to page 238, can have an influence on fuel consumption and on the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof*

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct the tire inflation pressure, refer to page 227, at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Drive away without delay

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Driving smoothly and looking ahead reduces fuel consumption.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

On a downhill gradient, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Fuel savings are achieved after the vehicle is switched off for only approx. 4 seconds.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Therefore, switch off these functions if they are not actually needed.

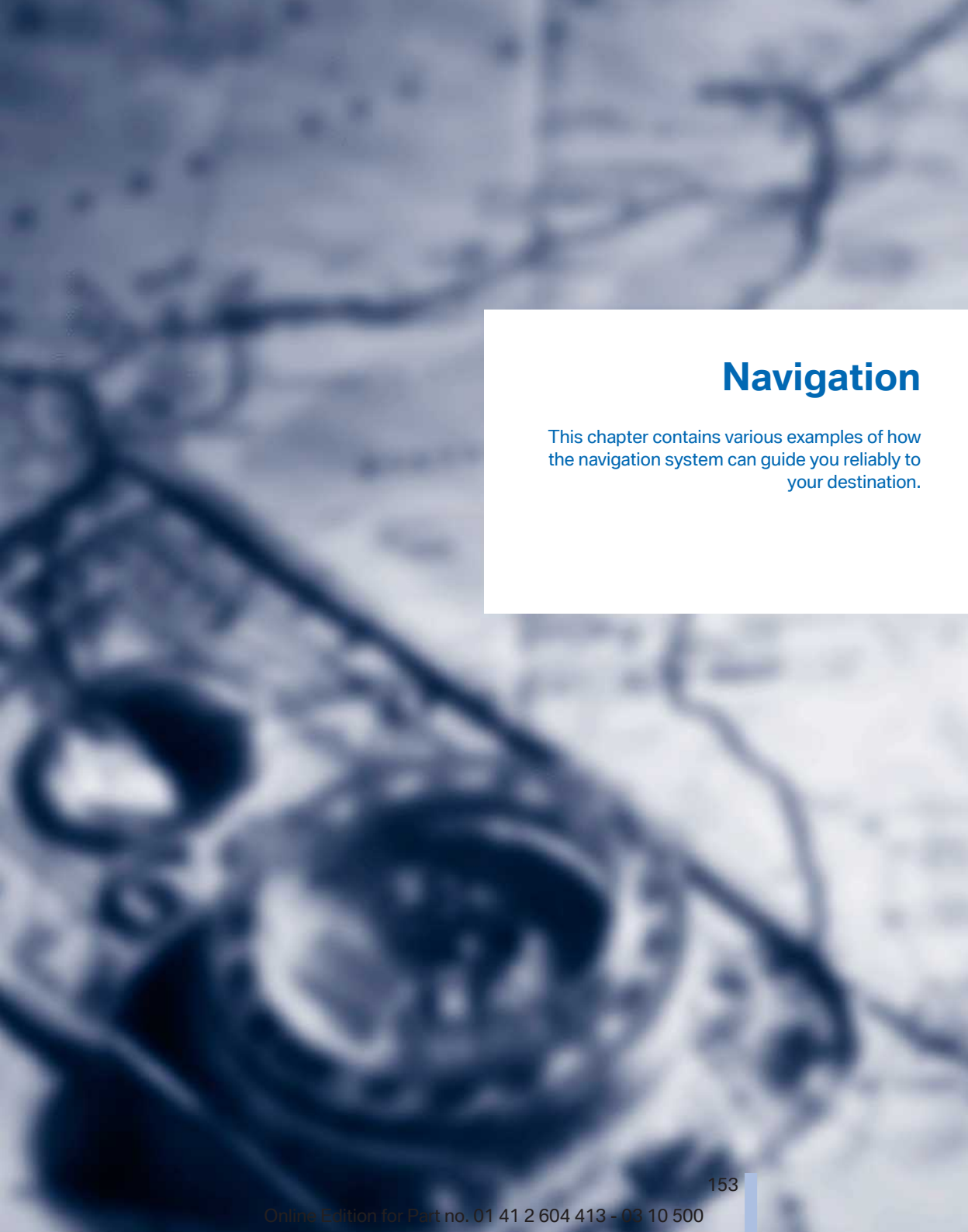
Have maintenance carried out

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle economy and operating life. Have the maintenance carried out by your service center.

Please also note the BMW Maintenance System, refer to page 238.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500



Navigation

This chapter contains various examples of how the navigation system can guide you reliably to your destination.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Navigation

Navigation system

General information

The navigation system can determine the precise position of the vehicle, with the aid of satellites and vehicle sensors, and can reliably guide you to every entered destination.

Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

Entries in stationary vehicle

Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Failure to take to this precaution can place you in violation of the law and put vehicle occupants and other road users in danger.◂

Destination input

Manual destination entry

General information

The system supports you in entering street names and house numbers by automatically completing the entry and providing entry comparisons, refer to page 24.

Stored town/city and street names can be called up quickly.

- ▷ If the existing entries should not be changed, the entries for the state/province and town/city can be skipped.
- ▷ Destination guidance is started to the town/city center if no street is entered.

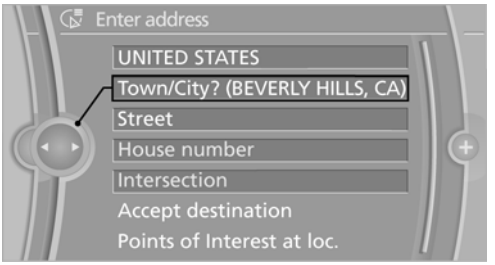
Entering a state/province

1. Press the MENU button.
2. "Navigation"
3. "Enter address"

4. Select "State/Province" or the displayed state/province.

Entering a town/city

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.



2. Select letters, if necessary.

   The list is narrowed down further with each entry.
3. Move the controller to the right.
4. Select the town/city name from the list.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

1. Change to the list of town/city names.
2. Highlight the town/city.

   With the Professional navigation system: A preview map is displayed on the split screen.
3. Select the town/city.

Entering the postal code

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.
2. 1@+ Select the symbol.
3. Select the numbers.
4. Change to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.
5. Highlight the postal code.

   With the Professional navigation system: A preview map is displayed on the split screen.
6. Select the postal code.

Entering a street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter a street and intersection in the same way as you would enter a town/city.

If there are several streets with the same name:

1. Change to the list of street names.
2. Highlight the street.

   With the Professional navigation system: A preview map is displayed on the split screen.
3. Select the street.

Alternative: enter the street address and house number

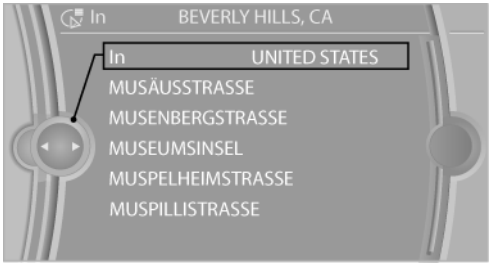
1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter the street as you would the town/city.
3. "House number"
4. Select the numbers.
5. Change to the list of house numbers.
6. Select a house number or range of house numbers.

Entering a street without a destination town/city

All streets of the selected state/province are offered. The associated town/city is displayed after the street name.

The desired street does not exist in the specified city/town because it belongs to another part of the city/town.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
4. Change to the list of street names.
5. "In" the displayed state/province.



6. Select the letters.
7. Change to the list of street names.
8. Highlight the street.

   With the Professional navigation system: A preview map is displayed on the split screen.
9. Select the street.

Starting destination guidance after entering the destination

1. "Accept destination"
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."

▷ Adjusting "Route preference", refer to page 162.

▷ Searching "Points of Interest at loc.", refer to page 157.

Address book

Selecting a destination from the address book

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book": contacts with addresses are displayed if these have been checked as destinations.

   If the mobile phone* does not display the contacts with addresses, they must first be

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

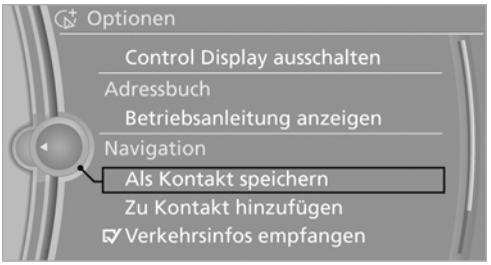
checked as a destination, refer to page 214.

3. Select a contact in the list or, if desired, with "A-Z search".
4. If necessary, select "Business address" or "Home address".

Storing the destination in the address book

After entering the destination, store the destination in the address book.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"

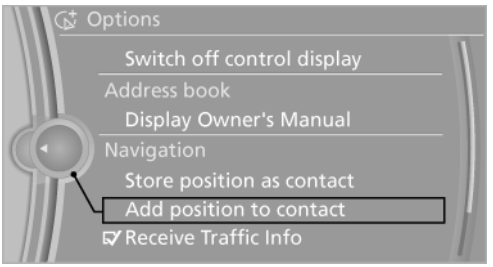


3. Select an existing contact, if available.
4. Select "Business address" or "Home address".
5. Enter "Last name" and, if necessary, "First name".
6. "Store in vehicle"

Storing the position

The current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store position as contact" or "Add position to contact"



4. Depending on the selection, choose an existing contact from the list. Select the type of address and enter the first and last name.
5. "Store in vehicle"

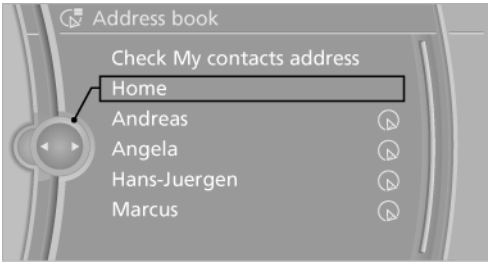
Editing or deleting an address

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. Highlight the entry.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit in Contacts" or "Delete entry"

Using the home address as the destination

The home address must be stored. Specify the home address, refer to page 213.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. "Home"



4. Start destination guidance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Last destinations

At a glance

The destinations previously entered are stored automatically.

The destinations can be called up and used as a destination for destination guidance.

Calling up the last destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"

3. Select the destination.
4. Start destination guidance.

Editing the destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit destination"

Deleting the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or "Delete all last destinations"

Special destinations

Opening the search for special destinations

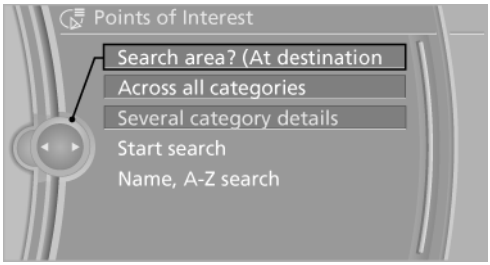
To select special destinations, e.g., hotels or tourist attractions:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"

   Narrow the search for special destinations by specifying the location and category.

Position of special destinations

1. "Search area"



2. Select the location where the system is to search for the special destination: "At current location", "At destination", "At a different destination", "Along route"

Special destinations category

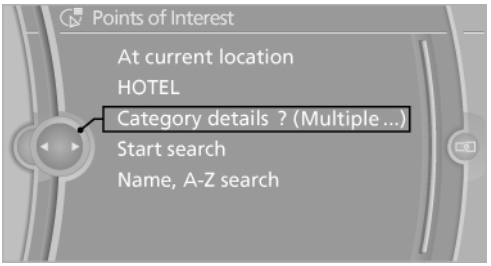
1. "Category"
2. Select "All" or the specific category of the special destination, e.g., hotels or restaurants.

Category details

For some special destinations, additional details can be displayed that are available in the navigation data, e.g., an Italian-style restaurant.

"Category details"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500



Starting the search for special destinations

1. "Start search"

   A list of the special destinations is displayed.

   - ▷ "At current location"

     The special destinations are listed according to their distance from the current location and are displayed with a directional arrow pointing to the destination.

   - ▷ "At destination", "At a different destination" and "Along route"

     Special destinations are sorted by the distance to the search point.

   - ▷ Destinations of the selected category are displayed in the map view as symbols. The display depends on the scale of the map and the category.

2. Highlight the special destination.

   With the Professional navigation system: A preview map is displayed on the split screen.

3. Select a special destination.
4. Select the symbol.
5. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."

   If a phone number is available, a connection can be established if necessary.

Destination entry via BMW Assist*

A connection is established to the Concierge service, refer to page 217.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Open "Options".
4. "BMW Assist dest. entry"

Entering the special destination by its name

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"
3. "Name, A-Z search"
4. Select the letters.

   Depending on the distance, the search may take some time. The list can contain a maximum of 100 entries.

5. Change to the list of special destinations.
6. Highlight the special destination.

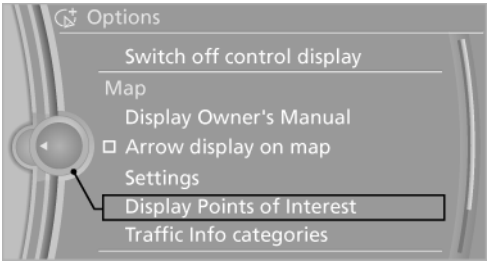
   With the Professional navigation system: A preview map is displayed on the split screen.

7. Select a special destination.
8. Select the symbol.
9. "Start guidance"

Displaying special destinations in the map

To display symbols of the special destinations in the map view:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display Points of Interest"



5. Select the setting.

Destination via map

Opening the map

1. "Navigation"

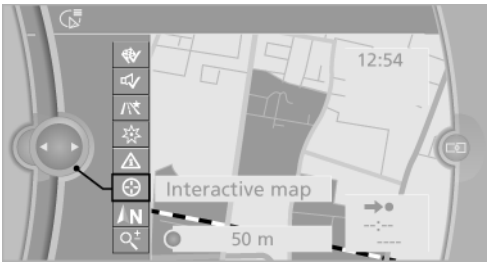
2. "Map"

The map section is displayed. The map shows the current position of the vehicle.

Selecting the destination

1. Select the symbol.

   "Interactive map" is started.
2. Select the destination with crosshairs.
   - To change the scale: turn the controller.
   - To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
   - To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.



3. Press the controller to display additional menu items.
   - Select the symbol.

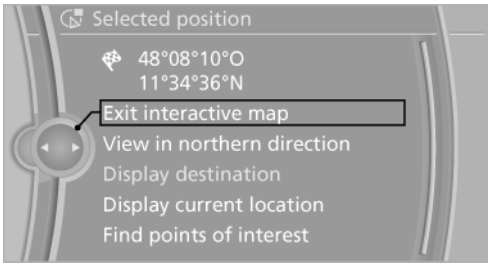
     "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."
   - "Exit interactive map": return to the map view.
   - "Find points of interest": the search for special destinations is started.

Specifying the street

If the system cannot recognize a street, it displays a street name in the vicinity or the coordinates of the destination.

Interactive map

In the interactive map, the scale can be adjusted and the visible map section can be shifted. In addition, pressing the controller makes further functions available:



- Select the symbol. Start destination guidance to the location marked on the map.
- "Exit interactive map"
- "View in northern direction"
- "Display destination": the map section around the destination is displayed.
- "Display current location": the map section around your current location is displayed.
- "Find points of interest"

Destination entry by voice*

General information

- Instructions for voice activation system, refer to page 25.
- When entering the destination by voice, you can change between voice operation and the iDrive.
- To have the available spoken instructions read aloud ›Voice commands‹

Saying the entries

- Example: to enter a town/city in Germany as a whole word, the language of the system must be German.
- The town/city, street, and house number can be said as a single sentence.
- Countries, towns and cities, streets, and intersections can be said as whole words or spelled in the language of the system, refer to page 81.
- Spell the entry if the spoken language and the language of the system differ.
- Say the letters smoothly, and avoid exaggerating the pronunciation and inserting lengthy pauses between the letters.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Entering the address

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹
3. Wait for a request from the system.
4. Specify the desired address in the suggested form.
5. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.
6. If necessary, individually name the separate components of the address, e.g., the town/city.

Entering a town/city

The town/city can either be said as a word or spelled.

1. ›City‹ or ›Spell city‹.
2. Wait for the system to prompt you for the town/city.
3. Say the name of the town/city, or name at least the first three letters.

   Depending on the entry, up to 20 towns/cities may be suggested.
4. Select the town/city.
   - ▷ To select a recommended town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ To select a different town/city: ›New entry‹
   - ▷ Select an entry: ›Entry ... ‹ e.g., entry 2
   - ▷ To spell an entry: ›Spell city‹

Entering a street or intersection

Enter a street or intersection in the same way as you would enter a town/city.

Entering a house number

House numbers can be entered up to the number 999 999.

›House number‹

Say each digit separately.

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹ or, if necessary, Enter new destination‹

Storing a destination

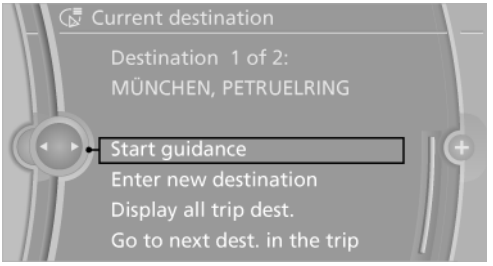
The destination is automatically added to the list of last destinations.

Planning a trip

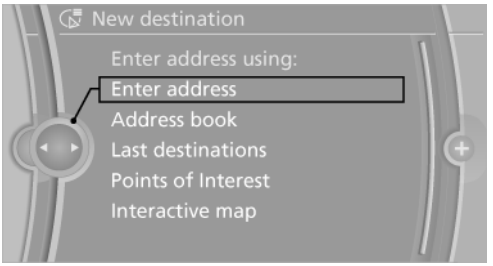
New trip

Additional intermediate destinations can be entered for a trip.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Enter new destination"



5. Select the type of destination entry and enter the intermediate destination.

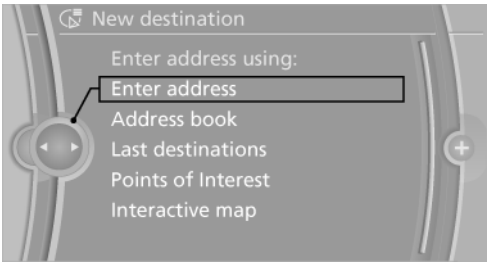


Entering intermediate destinations

A maximum of 30 intermediate destinations can be entered for one trip.

1. "Enter new destination"

2. Select the type of destination entry and enter the intermediate destination.



3. Select "Add as another dest.".
4. Select the location where the intermediate destination is to be inserted: "Reposition dest. in the trip"

Starting the trip

After all intermediate destinations have been entered, "Start guidance".

Or select a trip that has already been stored, if available. "Stored trips"

With the Professional navigation system: Storing a trip

Up to 30 created trips can be stored in the trip list.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store trip"
3. Enter the letters.
4. "OK"

Trip direction

The trip direction is reversed: intermediate destinations are displayed in reverse order in the list.

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. "Options"
4. "Reverse order of trip dest."

Intermediate destination options

1. "Destination in the trip"
2. Select an intermediate destination.
   - ▷ "Reposition dest. in the trip": move an intermediate destination to another position in the list.
   - ▷ "Delete dest. in the trip"

With the Professional navigation system: Deleting a trip

1. "Stored trips"
2. Highlight the desired trip.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete all trips" or "Delete trip"

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. Make a destination entry, refer to page 154.
3. "Accept destination"
4. "Start guidance"
   - ▷ The route is shown on the Control Display.
   - ▷ The distance to the destination/intermediate destination and the estimated time of arrival are displayed in the map view.
   - ▷ The arrow display is shown in the instrument panel and on the Control Display if necessary.

Terminating destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Stop guidance"

Continuing destination guidance

If the destination was not reached during the last trip, destination guidance can be resumed.

"Resume guidance"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

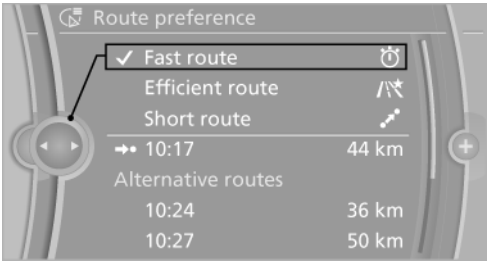
Route criteria

General information

- The route calculated can be influenced by selecting certain criteria.
- The route criteria can be changed when the destination is entered and during destination guidance.
- Road types are part of the navigation data and are taken into consideration when planning a route, e.g., avoid highways.
- The recommended route may differ from the route you would take based on personal experience.
- The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing the route criteria

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route preference"
4. Select the criterion:
   - "Fast route": time-optimized route, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads.
   - "Efficient route": optimized combination of the fastest and shortest route.
   - "Short route": short distance, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be.
   - "Alternative routes": other suggested alternative routes.



5. Specify additional criteria for the route, if necessary:
   - "Avoid highways": highways are avoided wherever possible.
   - "Avoid toll roads": toll roads are avoided wherever possible.
   - "Avoid ferries": ferries are avoided where possible.

Dynamic destination guidance

The route is automatically changed in the event of traffic obstructions.

- The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route.
- Traffic bulletins continue to be displayed on the map.
- Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that you travel through the traffic obstruction.

Activating dynamic destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Dynamic guidance"

Route

Different views of the route are available during destination guidance:

- Arrow view in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.
- List of streets and towns/cities.
- Map view, refer to page 164.
- Arrow display on the Head-Up Display*, refer to page 126.

Arrow view

The following information is displayed during destination guidance:

- Large arrow, current direction of travel.
- Small arrow, indicator of next change in direction.
- Intersection view.
- Lane information.
- Traffic bulletins.
- Distance to next change in direction.
- Street name at next change in direction.

Displaying a list of streets or towns/cities on the route

When destination guidance is started, a list of the streets and towns/cities on the route is displayed. The driving distances and traffic bulletins are displayed for each route section.

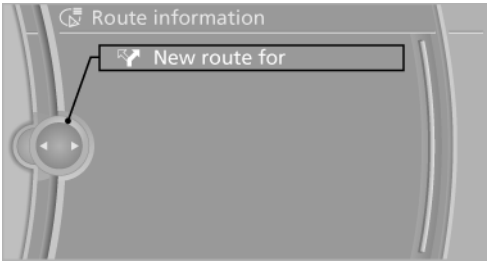
1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. Highlight a section.

   With the Professional navigation system: The route section is displayed on the split screen.

Bypassing a section of the route

Calculate a new route for a route section.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for:"



4. Turn the controller. Enter the desired number of miles.
5. Press the controller.

Resuming the original route

If the route section should no longer be bypassed:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Remove blocking"

Gas station recommendation

The remaining range is calculated and gas stations along the route are recommended.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Recommended refuel"

   A list of the gas stations is displayed.
4. Highlight a gas station.

   With the Professional navigation system: The position of the gas station is shown on the split screen.
5. Select the gas station.
6. Select the symbol.
7. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."

Switching spoken instructions on/off

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol.

Symbol	Meaning
	Spoken instructions are switched on
	Spoken instructions are switched off

Repeating spoken instructions

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Highlight the symbol.
4. Press the controller twice.

Volume of spoken instructions

Turn the volume button while giving an instruction until the desired volume is set.

Saving the spoken instructions on the programmable memory buttons

The function for switching the spoken instructions on/off can be stored on a programmable memory button, refer to page 23, for quick access.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Map view

Selecting the map view

Your location is indicated on the map.

After destination guidance is started, the planned route is displayed on the map.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

The following functions are directly available in the map view:

Symbol	Function
	Starting/ending destination guidance
	Switching spoken instructions on/off
	Changing the route criteria
	Searching for special destinations
	Displaying traffic bulletins
	Interactive map
	Map view settings
	Changing the scale

Press the controller to show/suppress additional information on the map.

Changing the map section

Open the interactive map.

- To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
- To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

Changing the scale

1. Select the symbol.
2. To change the scale: turn the controller.

Automatically scaled map scale

In the map view facing north, turn the controller in any direction until the AUTO scale is displayed. The map shows the entire range from your location to the destination.

Settings for the map view

The map is shown on the Control Display.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Settings"

Set the optimized map view.

- "Day/night mode"

  Select and create the necessary settings depending on the light conditions. When the traffic situation/gray card is activated, this setting is not taken into account.
- With the Professional navigation system: "Satellite images"

  Depending on availability and resolution, satellite images* are displayed at scales of approx. 1 mile to 600 miles/2 km to 1,000 km.
- With the Professional navigation system: "Perspective view in 3D"

  Displays a spatial view. Prominent areas that are contained in the navigation data are displayed on the map in 3D.
- "Traffic situation/gray map"

  The map is optimized for displaying traffic bulletins. Symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

With the Professional navigation system: Map view for split screen

The map view can be selected for the split screen independently from the main screen.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Split screen"

   The split screen is switched on.
3. Tilt the controller to the right until the split screen contents are selected.
4. Select the map view.

- ▷ "Map facing north"
- ▷ "Map direction of travel"
- ▷ "Map view with perspective"

5. To change the scale: change to the split screen and turn the controller.

Traffic bulletins*

At a glance

▷ Display the traffic bulletins from radio stations that broadcast the TMC (Traffic Message Channel) of a traffic information service. Information on traffic obstructions and hazards is updated continuously.

Certain BMW models equipped with navigation have the capability to display real-time traffic information. If your system has this capability the following additional terms and conditions apply:

An End-User shall no longer have the right to use the Traffic Data in the event that the End-User is in material breach of the terms and conditions contained herein.

A. Total Traffic Network, a division of Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. ("Total Traffic Network") holds the rights to the traffic incident data and RDS-TMC network through which it is delivered. You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless BMW of North America, LLC. ("BMW NA") and Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc (and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and/or (c) any unauthorized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

B. Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network, BMW NA, and their suppliers make no representations about content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed.

C. The licensed material is provided to licensee "as is," and "where is". Total Traffic Network, including, but not limited to, any and all third party providers of any of the licensed material, expressly disclaims, to the fullest extent permitted by law, all warranties or representations with respect to the licensed material (including, without limitation, that the licensed material will be error-free, will operate without interruption or that the traffic data will be accurate), express, implied or statutory, including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement fitness for a particular purpose, or those arising from a course of dealing or usage of trade.

D. Neither Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc. or BMW NA will be liable to you for any indirect, special, consequential, exemplary, or incidental damages (including, without limitation, lost revenues, anticipated revenues, or profits relating to the same) arising from any claim relating directly or indirectly to use of the traffic data, and even if Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc., or BMW NA are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so those particular limitations may not apply to you.

▷ The traffic information is displayed in the map.

Switching the reception on/off

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Receive Traffic Info"

Opening the traffic bulletins

1. "Navigation"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

2. "Map"

   Move the controller to the left.

   Select the symbol.

3. "Traffic Info"

   First, the traffic bulletins on the planned route are displayed.

   The traffic bulletins are sorted in the order of their distance from the current vehicle position.

4. Select a traffic bulletin.

   Select the symbol to obtain additional information.

Traffic bulletins in the map

When the traffic situation/gray card is activated, the view on the Control Display is switched over to shades of gray. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins. The day/night mode is disregarded in this setting. Symbols and special destinations are not displayed.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic situation/gray map"

Symbols in the map view

Depending on the scale of the map and the location of the traffic obstruction along the route, the symbols for the traffic obstructions are displayed.

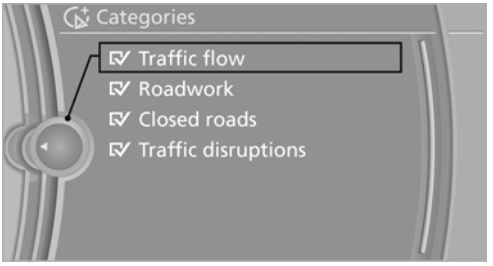
Additional information in the map view

Depending on the map scale, a traffic obstruction's length, direction, and impact are displayed in the map using triangles or gray bars along the calculated route.

Filtering of traffic bulletins

Set which traffic bulletins are to be displayed in the map.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Traffic Info categories"
5. Set the filter.



Traffic bulletins of the selected category are displayed in the map.

- Traffic bulletins on incidents along the route are always displayed.
- For your own safety, traffic bulletins that notify you of potentially dangerous situations, such as wrong-way drivers, cannot be hidden.

Traffic bulletins during destination guidance

- "Dynamic guidance", refer to page 162

  This feature influences the behavior of the system.

- During destination guidance, obstructions on the route are taken into consideration.
- Dangerous situations are displayed regardless of the setting.

Traffic obstructions

The system calculates the optimized route, taking into consideration traffic obstructions and road types.

Selecting a detour

Set whether traffic obstructions should be taken into consideration during route planning.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Traffic Info"
3. Select a traffic obstruction that you wish to bypass.
4. "Recomm. detour"

Taking traffic obstructions into consideration

1. "Navigation"
2. "Traffic Info"
3. First, the traffic bulletins on the planned route are displayed. The traffic bulletins are sorted in the order of their distance from the current vehicle position.
4. Select "Recomm. detour", if necessary.

   "Dynamic guidance" is activated automatically.

Navigation data

Information on navigation data

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Navigation system version" information is displayed on the data version.

Updating the navigation data

General information

Navigation data and authorization codes are available from your service center. Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

- Depending on the data volume, a data update may take several hours.
- Update during the trip to preserve battery.
- The basic navigation is available during the trip.
- The status of the update can be queried in the options menu.
- The system restarts after the update.
- The data carrier with the navigation data can be removed after the update is complete.

Professional navigation system: Perform the update

1. Insert the navigation DVD into the DVD player with the labeled side facing up.
2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.
3. Enter the authorization code of the navigation DVD and change the DVD if needed.

After an interruption of the trip, follow the instructions on the Control Display.

What to do if...

- The current transmission position cannot be displayed?

  The vehicle is located in an unrecognized region, is in a poor reception area, or the system is currently determining the position. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky.
- The destination without street information is not used for route guidance?

  When city has been input, no downtown can be determined.

  Input any street in the selected city and start destination guidance.
- The destination is not used for route guidance?

  The destination data is not contained in the navigation data. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- Letters for destination input cannot be selected?

  The stored data do not contain the data of the destination.

  Select a goal that is as close as possible to the original.
- The map view is shown in shades of gray?

  When the traffic situation/gray card is activated, the view on the Control Display is switched over to shades of gray. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins.
- Spoken instructions are no longer output during route guidance in front of intersections?

  The area has not yet been fully recorded, or you have left the recommended route and

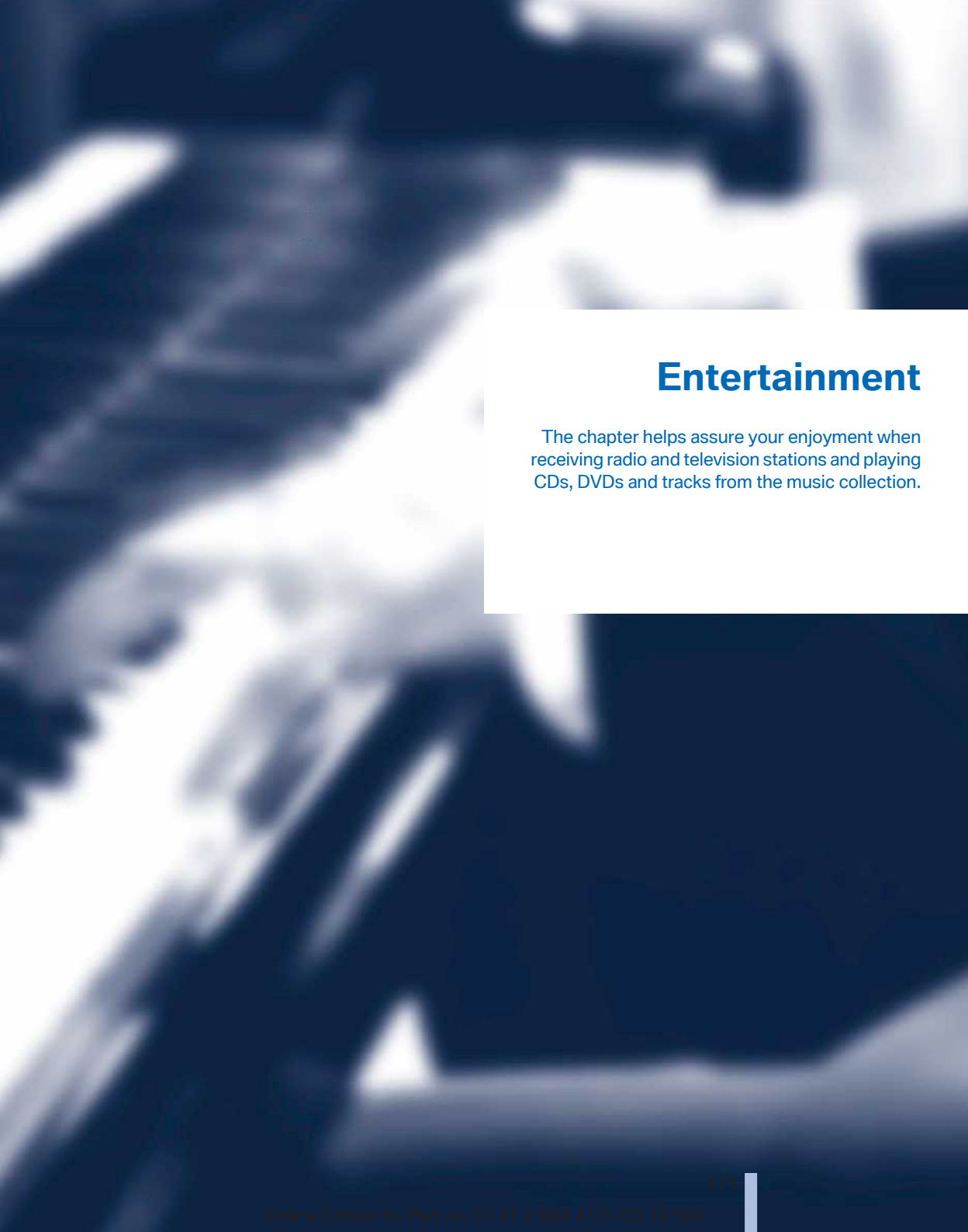
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500



Entertainment

The chapter helps assure your enjoyment when receiving radio and television stations and playing CDs, DVDs and tracks from the music collection.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Tone

General information

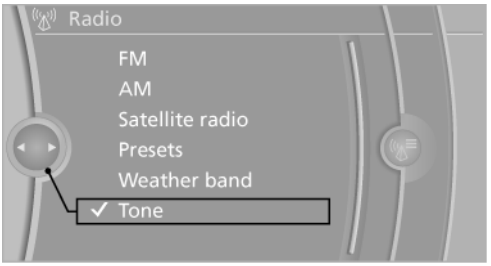
The sound settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Treble, bass, balance, and fader

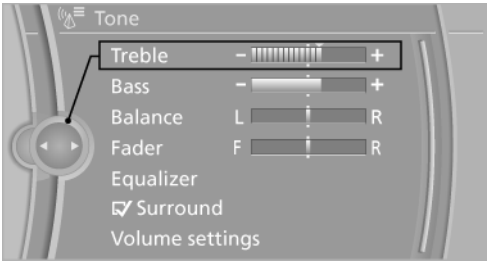
- "Balance": left/right volume distribution.
- "Fader": front/rear volume distribution.

Setting treble, bass, balance, and fader

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"



3. Select the desired tone settings.



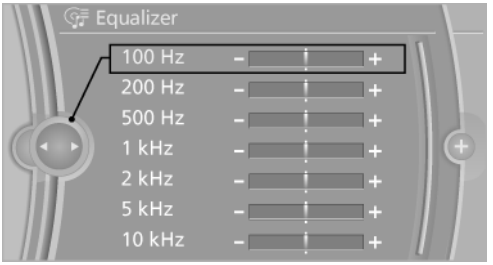
4. To adjust: turn the controller.
5. To confirm: press the controller.

Equalizer*

Setting for individual audio frequency ranges.

Adjusting the equalizer

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Equalizer"
4. Select the desired setting.



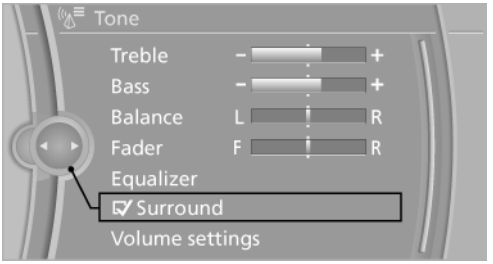
5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Multi-channel playback, surround*

Choose between stereo and multi-channel playback, surround.

Setting multi-channel playback, surround

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Surround"



Multi-channel playback, surround, is simulated when playing back an audio track in stereo.

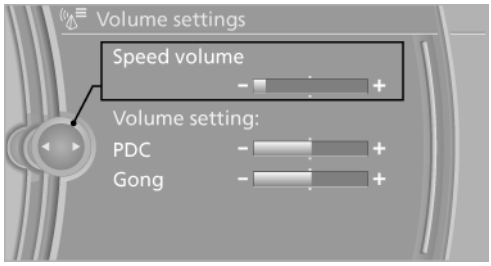
Multi-channel playback is automatically activated or deactivated, depending on the audio track selected.

Volume

- "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control.
- "PDC": volume of the PDC signal compared to the entertainment sound output.
- "Gong": volume of the signal, such as the safety belt reminder, compared to the entertainment sound output.

Adjusting the volume

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired volume setting.



5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

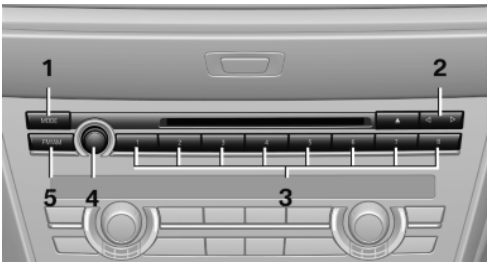
Resetting the tone settings

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Radio

Controls

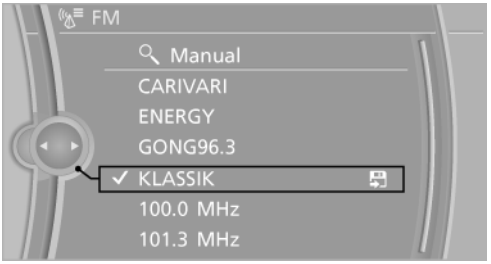


1 Change entertainment sources
2 Change station/track
3 Programmable memory buttons
4 Volume, on/off
5 Change wave band

AM/FM station

Selecting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.



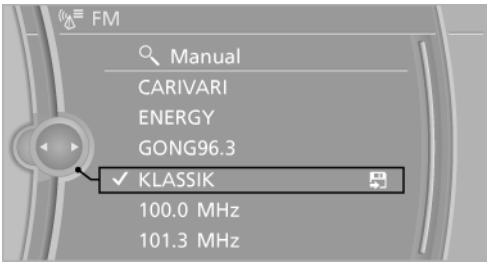
All saved stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing the station via the button

Press the button.

Storing a station

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Highlight the desired station.



4. Press the controller for an extended period.
5. Select the desired memory location.

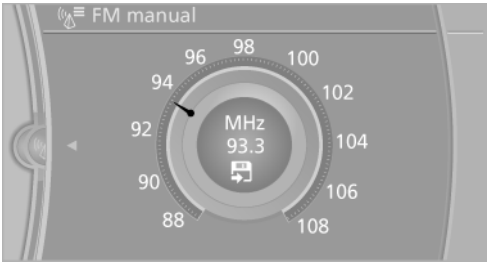
The stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

The stations can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 23.

Selecting a station manually

Station selection via the frequency.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Manual"
4. To select the frequency: turn the controller.



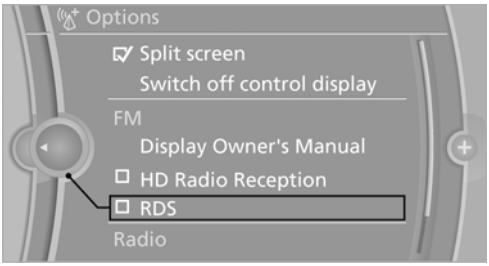
To store the station: press the controller for an extended period.

RDS*

RDS broadcasts additional information, such as the station name, in the FM wave band. When playing a station with multiple frequencies, the system automatically switches to the frequency with the best reception, if needed.

Switching the RDS on/off

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "RDS"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD Radio™ reception*

Many stations broadcast both analog and digital signals.

License conditions

HD Radio™ technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U. S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "HD Radio Reception"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD This symbol is displayed in the status line when the audio signal is digital.

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode, the playback switches between analog and digital reception. Due to time delayed broadcasting, there may be repetitions or interruptions. In this case, switch off digital radio reception.

Displaying additional information

Some stations broadcast additional information on the current track, such as the name of the artist.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Station info"

Selecting a substation

This symbol indicates that a main station also broadcasts additional substations. The station name of the main station ends in HD1. Station names of the substations end in HD2, HD3, etc.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select the substation.

When reception is poor, the substation is muted for several seconds. If reception is interrupted for an extended period, it switches back to the main station.

Weather Band*

General information

The availability of the Weather Band and the number of available channels can vary depending on the region.

Switching on the Weather Band

1. "Radio"
2. "Weather band"
3. Select the desired channel.

Additional information

Weather Band is a service of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA).

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Additional information on the Internet: www.nws.noaa.gov.

Satellite radio*

General information

The channels are offered in predefined packages. The packages must be enabled by telephone.

Navigation bar overview

Symbol	Function
	Change the list view.
	Select the category.
	Direct channel entry
	Timeshift
	Open the My Favorites category/ open a favorite.
	Manage the favorites.
	Traffic Jump

The functions of the navigation bar symbols can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 23.

Managing a subscription

To be able to enable or unsubscribe from the channels, you must have reception. It is usually at its best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky. The channel name is displayed in the status line.

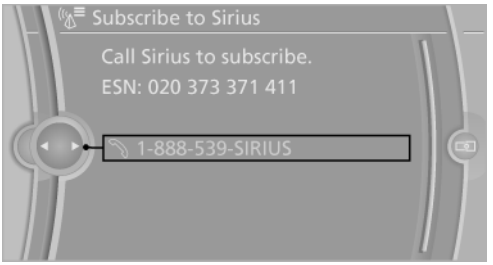
Enabling channels

The Unsubscribed Channels category contains all disabled channels.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Category"

4. Select the Unsubscribed Channels category.
5. Select the desired channel.

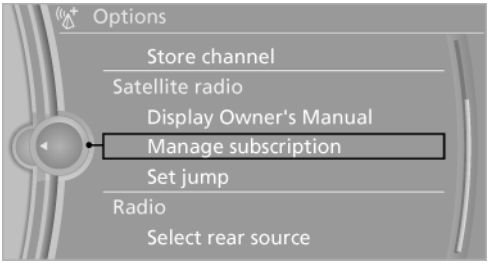
   The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.
6. Select the phone number to have the channel enabled.



You can unsubscribe from the channels again via this phone number.

Unsubscribing from channels

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Manage subscription"



5. The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.
6. Call Sirius to unsubscribe from the channels.

Selecting channels

You can only listen to enabled channels.

The selected channel is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Via the iDrive

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.

Via the buttons on the center console

Press the button.

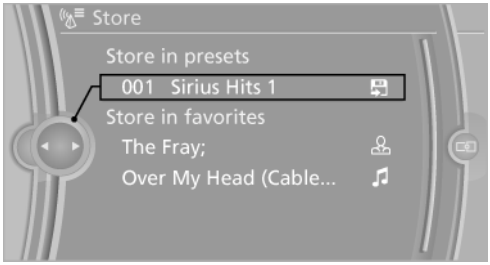
The next channel is selected.

Via direct channel entry

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Select channel"
4. Turn the controller until the desired channel is reached and press the controller.

Storing a channel

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. If necessary, open "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Press the controller again to confirm the highlighted channel.



7. Select the desired memory location.

The channels are stored for the remote control currently in use.

The channels can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 23.

Changing the list view

The list view changes every time the first symbol on the navigation bar is pressed.

Information on the channel is displayed.

Symbol	Meaning
	Channel name
	Artist
	Track

Selecting a category

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Category"
4. Select the desired category.

Timeshift

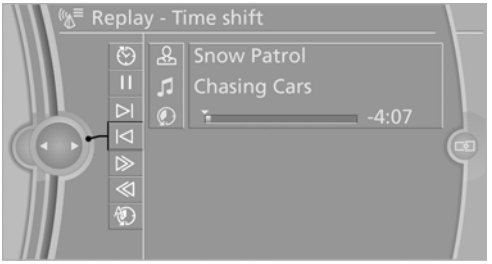
Approx. one hour of the program being broadcast on the channel currently being listened to is stored in a buffer. Prerequisite: the signal must be available.

The stored audio track can be played with a delay following the live broadcast. When the buffer is full, the older tracks are overwritten. The buffer is cleared when a new channel is selected.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Opening the timeshift function

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Replay - Time shift"



- The red arrow shows the current playback position.
- The time difference to the live broadcast is displayed next to the buffer bar.

  For live transmissions: "live".

Timeshift menu

Symbol	Function
	Go to the live broadcast
	Playback/pause
	Next track
	Previous track
	Fast forward
	Reverse
	Automatic timeshift deactivated/activated

Automatic timeshift

When the function is activated, audio playback is stopped automatically in the event of:

- Incoming and outgoing telephone calls.
- Activation of the voice activation system.
- Muting.

The audio playback then continues with a time delay.

To activate:

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Replay - Time shift"
4. "Automatic time shift"

To deactivate: "Automatic time shift".

Storing favorites

Up to 30 favorites can be stored in the favorites list. Available favorites are artist, track, game, league, and team.

Storing the artist, track, or game

It is only possible to store favorites that are currently being broadcast. The channel information must be available.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. If necessary, open "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Select the artist, track, or game.

Storing the league or team

Leagues or teams can be added to the favorites from a selection list.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Manage favorites"
4. "Add sports information"

5. Select the league.
6. Select "Add all teams" or the desired team.

Opening the favorites

If an activated favorite is played back, the following message appears for approx. 20 seconds: "Favorite alert!".

☆ "Favorites"

Select the symbol while the message is shown.

The displayed favorite is played.

If there is no message, the system changes to the My Favorites category. All favorites currently being broadcast can be selected from a list.

Managing the favorites

Activating/deactivating the favorites

Favorites can be activated and deactivated globally and individually.

1. "Satellite radio"
2. ☆ "Manage favorites"
3. Select "Activate alert" or the desired favorites.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Deleting favorites

1. "Satellite radio"
2. ☆ "Manage favorites"
3. Highlight the desired favorite.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

Traffic Jump

Traffic and weather information for a selected region is broadcast every few minutes.

Selecting a region

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Set jump"
5. Select the desired region.

The region is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating/deactivating the jump

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Jump to:"

Information for the selected region is broadcast as soon as it is available.

A new panel opens.

Canceling the Traffic Jump: "Cancel".

Symbol	Meaning
	Information will be broadcast shortly.
	Information is currently being broadcast.

Select one of the symbols to deactivate Traffic Jump.

Automatic update

About twice a year, Sirius performs an update of the channel names and positions. The update takes place automatically and may take several minutes.

Notes

- Reception may not be available in some situations, such as under certain environmental or topographic conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
- The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages; next to tall buildings; or near trees, mountains or other powerful sources of radio interference.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Stored stations

General information

It is possible to store up to 40 stations.

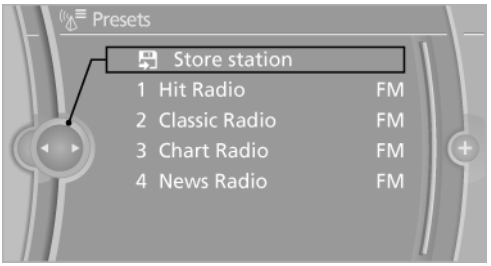
Calling up a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.

Storing a station

The station currently selected is stored.

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. "Store station"



4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of stored stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

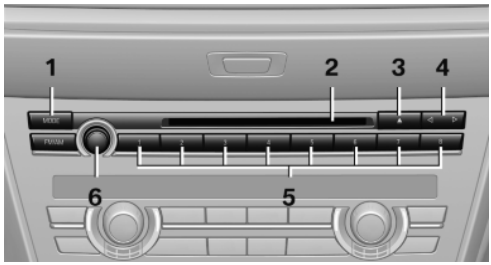
The stations can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 23.

Deleting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

CD/multimedia

Controls



1 Change the entertainment source
2 CD/DVD* drive
3 Eject CD/DVD
4 Change station/track
5 Programmable memory buttons
6 Volume, on/off

CD/DVD*

CD/DVD playback

Loading the CD/DVD* player

Insert the CD/DVD with the printed side up.

Playback begins automatically.

Reading can take a few minutes with compressed audio files.

Starting playback

There is a CD/DVD in the CD/DVD player or changer.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD:

Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD* player
1 ... 6	DVD changer*
	CD/DVD player, rear*

Playable formats

- DVD: DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R DL, DVD+R DL, DVD audio (video part only), DVD video*.
- CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA, VCD*, SVCD*.
- Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC.

Audio playback

Selecting the track using the button

Press the button repeatedly until the desired track is played.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Selecting the track using the iDrive

Audio CDs

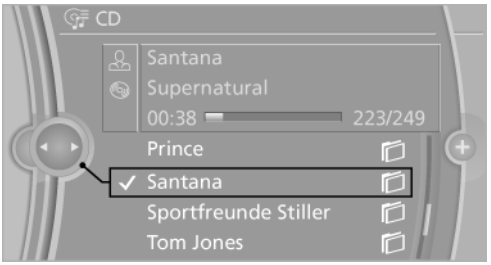
Select the desired track to begin playback.

CDs/DVDs* with compressed audio files

Depending on the data, some letters and numbers of the CD/DVD may not be displayed correctly.

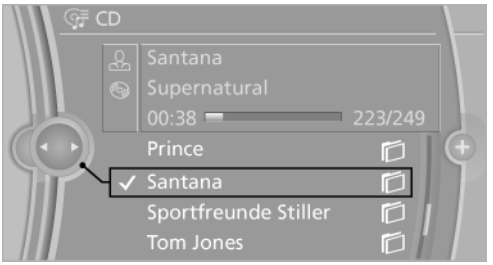
1. Select the directory if necessary.

   To change to a higher level directory: move the controller to the left.



2. Select the desired track to begin playback.

Displaying information on the track

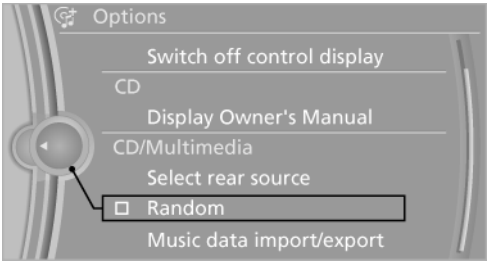


If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

- Interpret.
- Album track.
- Number of tracks on the CD/DVD.
- File name of track.

Random playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Random"



CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files: all tracks within the selected directory are played in random order.

Random mode is switched off when the audio source is changed and the ignition is switched off.

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button.

Automatic repeat*

The selected track, directories, or CDs/DVDs are repeated automatically.

Video playback*

Country codes

Only DVDs with the code of the home region can be played back; also refer to the information on the DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	Southeast Asia
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand
5	Northwest Asia, North Africa
6	China
0	All regions

Playback

The video image is displayed on the front Control Display up to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h; in some countries, it is only displayed if the parking brake is set or if the automatic transmission is in position P.

DVD video

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a DVD with video content.
4. DVD "DVD menu"

VCD/SVCD

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a CD with video content.
4. "Select track"
5. Select the desired track.

Video menu

To open the video menu: turn the controller during playback.

Press the controller when "Back" is displayed.

Symbol	Function
DVD	Open the DVD menu.
▷	Start playback.
❙❙	Pause
□	Stop
▷|	Next chapter
|◁	Previous chapter
▷▷	Fast forward
◁◁	Reverse

In fast forward/reverse: the speed increases every time the controller is pressed. To stop, start playback.

DVD menu

1. If necessary, turn the controller to open the video menu.
2. DVD "DVD menu"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

The DVD menu is displayed. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.

3. To select menu items: move the controller and press it.

To change to the video menu: turn the controller and press it.

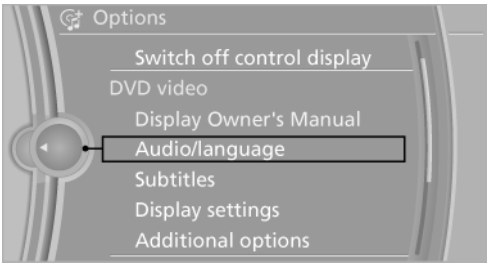
DVD/VCD settings

For some DVDs, settings can only be made via the DVD menu; refer also to the information on the DVD.

Selecting the language*

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Audio/language"

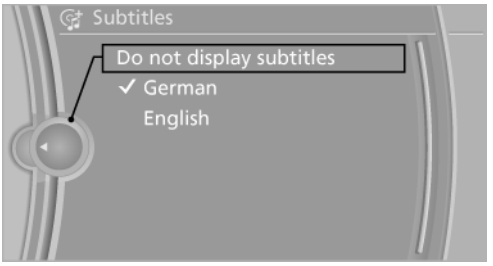


4. Select the desired language.

Selecting the subtitles*

The subtitles that are available depend on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Subtitles"
4. Select the desired language or "Do not display subtitles".



Setting the brightness, contrast and color

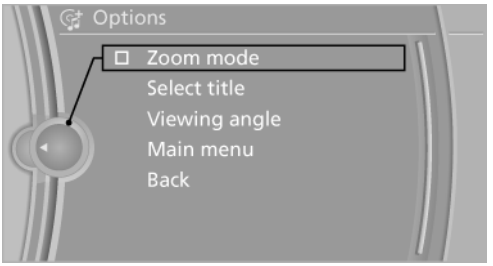
1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display settings"
4. "Brightness", "Contrast" or "Color"

5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Selecting the zoom

Display the video image on the entire screen.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Zoom mode"



Selecting a track

DVD video:

1. Turn the controller when the DVD menu is displayed.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Select title"
5. Select the desired track.

VCD/SVCD:

1. "Select track"
2. Select the desired track.

Selecting the camera angle*

The availability of a different camera angle depends on the DVD and the current DVD track.

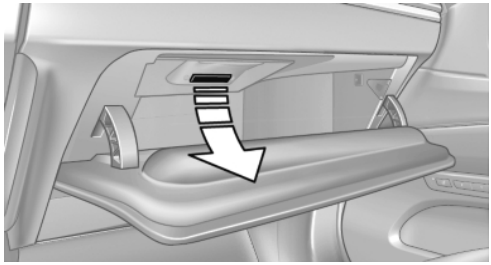
1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Viewing angle"
5. Select the desired camera angle.

Opening the main menu, back

These functions are not contained on every DVD. Therefore, they may not be available for use.

DVD changer*

In the glove compartment



Pull down the release cover.

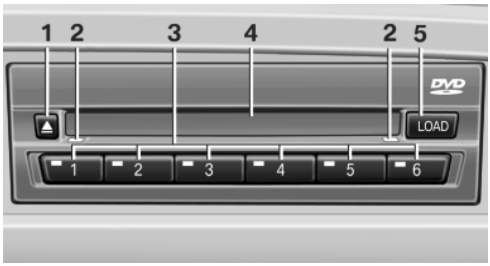
The DVD changer tilts down.

To close: fold the DVD changer up until it engages.

Fold up the DVD changer

Always fold the DVD changer back up after filling and emptying it; otherwise, the DVD changer could be damaged.◄

Controls and displays



1 Empty DVD compartments
2 LED on DVD slot
3 Buttons for DVD compartments
4 DVD slot
5 Fill DVD compartments

Filling the DVD compartments individually

1. LOAD Press the button.

   The LED on the first empty compartment flashes.
2. Select another compartment if necessary.
3. Wait for the LEDs on the DVD slot to flash.
4. Insert a single CD or DVD in the middle.

   The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically and placed into the selected compartment.

Sliding in CDs/DVDs

Do not insert the CD/DVD until the LEDs on the DVD slot are flashing; otherwise, the CD/DVD or the DVD changer could be damaged.

Do not continue to push on the CD/DVD; this may cause it to jam and prevent it from being able to eject again.◄

Filling all empty DVD compartments

1. LOAD Hold the button down.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

The LEDs on the empty CD compartments flash.

2. Wait for the LEDs on the DVD slot to flash and then insert a CD or DVD into the center.

   The CDs/DVDs are drawn in automatically and placed into the vacant compartments.

Sliding in CDs/DVDs

Do not insert the CD/DVD until the LEDs on the DVD slot are flashing; otherwise, the CD/DVD or the DVD changer could be damaged.

Do not continue to push on the CD/DVD; this may cause it to jam and prevent it from being able to eject again.◀

After they are inserted, it may take several minutes for the CDs/DVDs to be read in.

Removing a single CD/DVD

1. Press the button.
2. Select the DVD compartment.

   The CD/DVD is partially ejected.
3. Remove the CD/DVD.

Removing all CDs/DVDs

1. Hold the button down.
2. Remove the CDs/DVDs.

Malfunctions

If all LEDs on the DVD changer are flashing rapidly, a malfunction has occurred.

To eliminate the malfunction:

1. Press one of the buttons:
   - ▷
   - ▷

   The CD/DVD last inserted is ejected.
2. Remove the CD/DVD.

The DVD changer is functional again after the LEDs stop flashing rapidly.

Audio playback*

The audio track of a DVD can be played back even if video playback is not possible in the vehicle.

Only the main film without the previews or extras can be played back.

Starting playback

A DVD is located in the DVD changer.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.

Selecting a chapter using the button

Press the button repeatedly until the desired chapter is played.

Selecting a chapter using iDrive

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.
4. Select the desired chapter.

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button.

Selecting the language*

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Audio/language"
6. Select the desired language.

Notes

CD/DVD player and changer

Do not remove the cover

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged; otherwise, severe eye damage may occur.◄

CDs and DVDs

Use of CDs/DVDs

- Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied, as these can become detached during playback due to heat buildup and can cause irreparable damage to the device.

- Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g., single CDs; otherwise, the CDs or the adapter may jam and no longer eject.
- Do not use combined CDs/DVDs, e.g., DVD Plus, as the CDs/DVDs can jam and will no longer eject.◄

General malfunctions

- CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.
- If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens, and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions involving individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this can be due to one of the following causes:

Home-recorded CDs/DVDs

- Possible reasons for malfunctions with home-recorded CDs/DVDs are inconsistent data creation or recording processes, or poor quality or old age of the blank CD/DVD.
- Only label CDs/DVDs on the upper side with a pen intended for this purpose.

Damage

- Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.
- Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.
- Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F/50 °C, high humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology that is based on multiple registered US patents and the intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Media protected by this product - unless otherwise agreed with Macrovision - may only be used for private purposes. Copying of this technology is prohibited.

Music collection*

Storing music

General information

Music tracks from CDs/DVDs and USB devices can be stored in the music collection on a hard disc in the vehicle and played from there.

- Audio CD: tracks are converted into a compressed audio format. If available, information on the album, such as the artist, is stored as well.
- CD/DVD or USB device with compressed audio files: the entire content of the CD/DVD or the USB device is stored in the vehicle as an album. The WMA, MP3, and AAC formats are stored. Individual tracks and directories

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

can be deleted later, Deleting a track and directory, refer to page 191.

Tracks with DRM copy protection can be stored but cannot be played back.

Backing up music data

Regularly back up the music data; otherwise, it could be lost if there is a fault on the hard disk.◀

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2010 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2010 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Storing from a CD/DVD

1. Insert a CD or DVD into the CD/DVD player.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "CD/DVD"
4. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
5. "Store in vehicle"

The music collection is displayed and the first track of the CD/DVD is played back. During the storage process, the tracks are played in sequence.

Observe the following during the storage process:

Do not switch to the CD/DVD player and do not remove the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD player as this will interrupt the storage process. You can switch to the other audio sources without interrupting the storage process. Tracks from the current CD/DVD that have already been stored can be called up.

Interrupting storage

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. "Storing..."

4. "Cancel storing"

The storage process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Continuing the storage process

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
4. "Continue storing"

Storage of the CD/DVD continues at the beginning of the track at which storage was interrupted.

Album information

During storage, information such as the name of the artist is stored with the track, if this information is available in the vehicle database or on the CD.

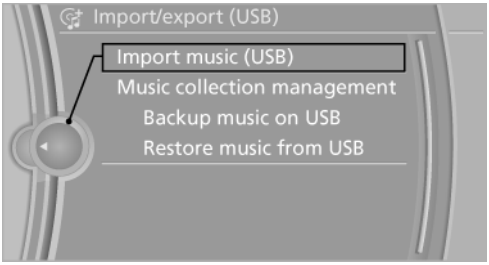
To update the database, contact your service center.

Storing from a USB device

To store music, a suitable device must be connected to the USB interface in the glove compartment.

- ▷ Suitable devices: USB mass storage devices, such as USB flash drives or MP3 players with a USB interface.
- ▷ Unsuitable devices: USB hard discs, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with multiple inserts, Apple iPod/iPhone. Music from the Apple iPod/iPhone can be played via the USB audio interface in the center armrest.

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment, refer to page 140.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "Music collection"
4. Open "Options".
5. "Music data import/export"
6. "Import music (USB)"



Playing music

Music search

All tracks for which additional information has been stored can be accessed by the music search. Tracks without additional information can be called up via the corresponding album, refer to page 190.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Music search"

4. Select the desired category.

5. Select the desired entry.
   - ▷ Select "A-Z search", refer to page 24, and input the desired entry.
   - ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.
6. Select other categories if you wish.

   The tracks found are listed in alphabetical order.

   Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
7. "Start play"

   The list of tracks is repeated automatically.

Restarting the music search

"New search"

Music search using spoken instructions*

Instructions for the voice activation system, refer to page 25.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

2. ›Music search‹
3. Open the desired category, e. g., ›Select artist‹.
4. Say the desired entry in the list.
5. Select other categories if you wish.

To select a track directly: ›Title ... ‹.

Say the spoken instruction and the name of the desired track in a single sentence.

Current playback

List of tracks that was generated last by the music search or the album selected last.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Current playback"

4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Top 50

The 50 most frequently played tracks.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Top 50"
4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Albums

All stored albums, listed in order of their storage dates.

Symbol	Format
	Audio CD
	Compressed audio files

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Select the desired album.

   Depending on the album, the tracks or the subdirectories of the album are displayed. The first track is played automatically, if possible.

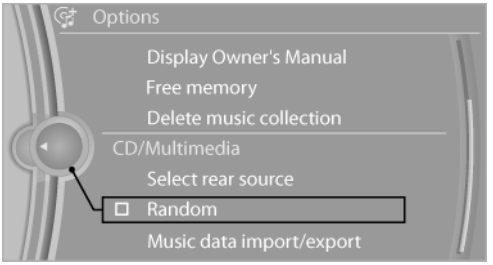
4. Change directories if needed to select tracks.

   To go up a level in the directory: move the controller to the left.

Random playback

All tracks of the selection are played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"



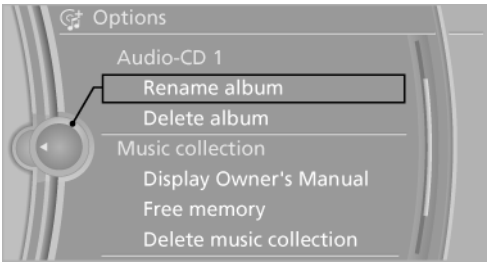
Managing music

Albums

Renaming an album*

The name of the album, if available, is automatically entered when the album is stored. If the name is unknown it can be changed later if needed.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the desired album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Rename album"



6. Select the letters individually.

Deleting an album

An album cannot be deleted while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the desired album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete album"

Deleting a track and directory

A track cannot be deleted while it is being played.

A directory cannot be deleted while a track from that directory is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the directory or track.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete folder" or "Delete track"

Free memory capacity

Display the free memory capacity in the music collection.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Free memory"

Music collection

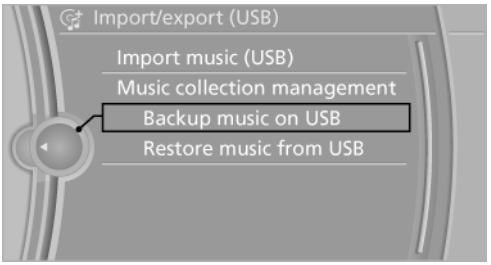
Backing up the music collection

The entire music collection can be stored on a USB device. Make sure there is enough free memory capacity on the USB device.

Depending on the number of tracks, backing up the music collection may take several hours. Therefore, it is best to perform the backup during a long trip.

1. Starting the engine.
2. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment, refer to page 140.
3. "CD/Multimedia"
4. "Music collection"
5. Open "Options".
6. "Music data import/export"

7. "Backup music on USB"



Storing the music collection in the vehicle

When storing from the USB device, the existing music collection in the vehicle is replaced.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Music data import/export"
5. "Restore music from USB"

Deleting the music collection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete music collection"

External devices

At a glance

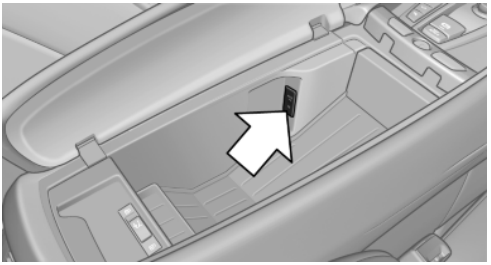
Symbol	Meaning
	AUX-IN port
	USB audio interface*/mobile phone audio interface*
L	Rear AUX-IN port*
R	Rear AUX-IN port on the right*

AUX-IN port

At a glance

- For connecting audio devices, e.g., MP3 player. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.
- Recommendation: use medium tone and volume settings on the audio device. The tone depends on the quality of the audio files.

Connecting



The AUX-IN port is in the center armrest.

Connect the headphones or line-out connector of the device to the jack plug.

Playback

1. Connect the audio device, switch it on and select a track on the audio device.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. If necessary, "External devices"
4. "AUX front"

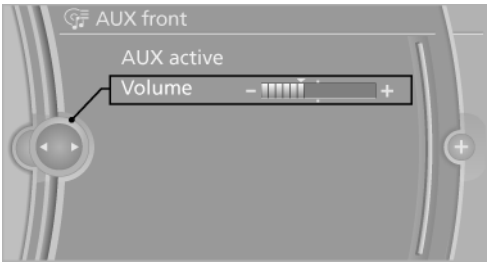
Volume

The volume of the sound output is dependent on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

Adjusting the volume

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If necessary, "External devices"
3. "AUX front"

4. "Volume"



5. Turn the controller until the desired volume is set and press the controller.

USB audio interface*/mobile phone audio interface*

At a glance

It is possible to connect external audio devices. They can be operated on the iDrive. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Connectors for external devices

- Connection via USB audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g., MP3 players, USB flash drives, or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.
- Connection via snap-in adapter when equipped with extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone: Apple iPhone or mobile phones.

  Playback is only possible if no connector is plugged into the USB audio interface.

Due to the large number of different audio devices available on the market, it cannot be ensured that every audio device/mobile phone is operable on the vehicle.

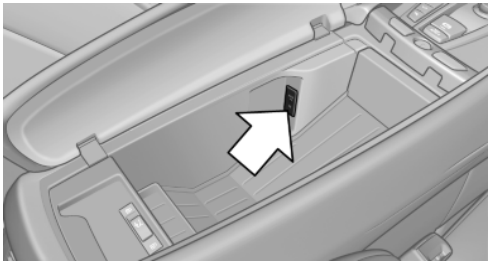
Ask your service center about suitable audio devices/mobile phones.

Audio files

Standard audio files can be played back:

- MP3.
- WMA.
- WAV (PCM).
- AAC.
- Playback lists: M3U.

Connection of Apple iPod/iPhone via USB audio interface



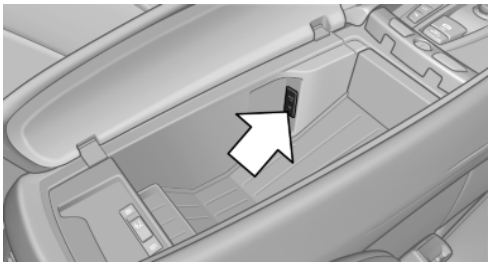
The USB audio interface is in the center armrest.

To connect the device, use the special cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone, available from your service center. The cable adapter is required for a good connection.

Use the cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone to connect the Apple iPod/iPhone with the AUX-IN port and the USB interface.

The Apple iPod/iPhone menu structure is supported by the USB audio interface.

Connection of a USB device via the USB audio interface



The USB audio interface is in the center armrest.

Connect using a flexible adapter cable to protect the USB audio interface and the USB device against physical damage.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Connect the USB device to the USB interface.

After connecting for the first time

Information on all music tracks, e.g. artist or type of music, as well as playback lists are transmitted into the vehicle. This may take some time, depending on the USB device and the number of tracks.

During transmission, the tracks can be called up via the file directory.

Number of tracks

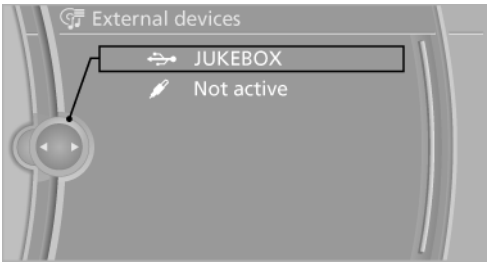
Information from up to four USB devices or for approx. 16,000 tracks can be stored in the vehicle. If a fifth device is connected or if more than 16,000 tracks are stored, information on existing tracks may be deleted.

Copy protection

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.

Playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.



The playback starts with the first track.

When an Apple iPhone is connected via the snap-in adapter and an audio device is connected to the AUX-IN port at the same time, the audio signal of the AUX-IN port is played.

On the Splitscreen*, the CD cover for the music track might be displayed after a few seconds.

Track search

Selection is possible via:

- Playback lists.
- Information: type of music, artist, album, track.
- Additionally for USB devices: file directory, composer.

Tracks are displayed if they have been saved in the Latin alphabet.

Starting the track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired category, e.g., "Genre" or "Artist".

   All entries are displayed in a list.

   - Open "A-Z search" and input the desired entry. When a letter is entered, the results are filtered using this letter as the first letter. If multiple letters are entered, all results that contain that sequence are displayed.
   - Select the desired entry from the list.

5. Select other categories if you wish.

   Not all categories need to be selected. For example, if all of the tracks by a certain artist are to be displayed, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
6. "Start play"

Restarting a track search

"New search"

Playback lists

Calling up playback lists.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Playlists"

Current playback

List of tracks currently being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Current playback"

Random playback

The current list of tracks is played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Notes

Do not expose the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the audio device operating instructions.

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g., bit rates greater than 256 kbit/s, the files may not play back correctly in each case.

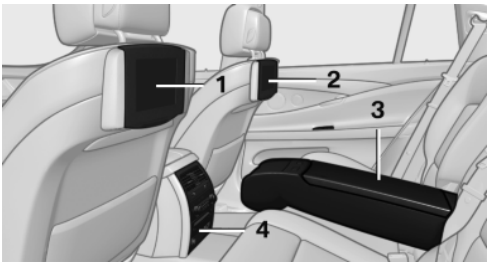
Information on connection

- The connected audio device is supplied with a max. power of 500 mA if supported by the device. Therefore, do not connect the device to the power socket in the vehicle.
- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.
- Do not connect USB hard drives.
- Do not use the audio interface to recharge external devices.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

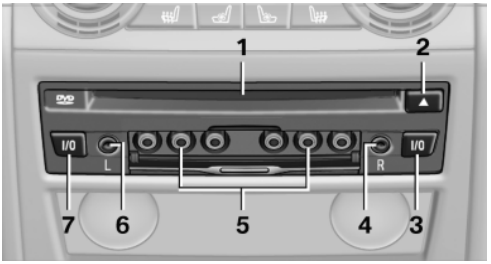
Rear entertainment*

Controls



1 Screen, left
2 Screen, right
3 Center armrest, remote control
4 CD/DVD player

Rear CD/DVD player



1 CD/DVD slot
2 Eject CD/DVD
3 On/off, right
4 Headphone connection, right
5 RCA sockets
6 Headphone connection, left
7 On/off, left

Switching the system on/off

I/O Press the left or right side of the button on the CD/DVD player in the rear for the respective page.

Rear entertainment and screens are switched on/off.

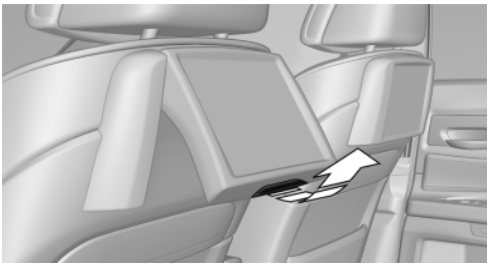
After switching off the ignition, the system must be switched on again.

Screens

Adjusting

Danger of burns when screen is folded out

Do not reach behind the screen; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned. The back of the screen can become very hot.◂



- To fold out: pull at the bottom edge.
- To fold in: press against the bottom edge.

Notes

- Do not cover lower screen edge, since this is where the sensors and the infrared interface are installed.
- When loading the rear seats and adjusting the backrest of the front seat, fold in the screens.
- When using the through-loading system, fold the screens down.
- When cleaning the screen, follow the care instructions, refer to page 253.

Remote control

In the center armrest in the rear

Storage is possible in a vertical or horizontal position in the center armrest.

Menu navigation

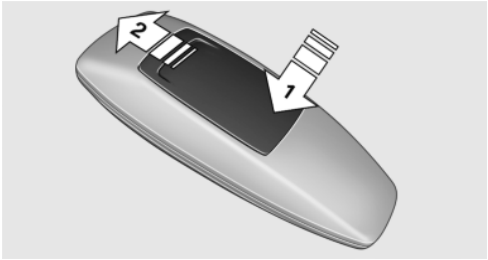
Press the button	Function
	Operating concept as for the front controller. Turn the wheel: highlight a menu item. Press the center knob: confirm the selection. Press the arrow buttons: change between panels.
MENU	Opens the main menu.
BACK	Displays the previous menu.
OPTION	Opens the "Options" menu.
◁ ▷	Changes the station, track or chapter. Press and hold the button: fast forward/reverse.
– ▷ +	Adjusts the volume.
L R	Switches the volume adjustment to the left/right. For Rear seat entertainment Professional*: Switch over between the display screens.

The transmission time of the remote control is limited by law. To execute a function again, press or turn the required button again.

Replacing the batteries

No rechargeable batteries

Do not use rechargeable batteries, as damage may result from the substances in the batteries.◄



1. Remove the cover. Press on the cover, arrow 1, and push forward, arrow 2.
2. Insert batteries of the same type.
3. Close the cover.

Take the used battery to a recycling center or to your service center.

Controls

Almost all functions can be operated in the same manner as they are in the front. Special features of operating the system in the rear are described here.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Audio/video playback

Audio

Audio can be played back via rear entertainment from any source in the vehicle.

Operation is the same as for the front audio playback, refer to page 181.

Video

Video can be played back in the rear from the following sources:

- DVD changer*.
- Rear CD/DVD player.
- External device in rear.

If a video image is being played back in the rear, the rear CD/DVD player cannot be selected in the front.

Operation is the same as for the front video playback, refer to page 183.

Radio

When the same radio source is selected in the front and rear (e.g., FM/AM), the same radio station is played.

Operation is the same as for the front radio, refer to page 174.

CD/multimedia

CD/DVD

When the same audio source (front CD/DVD player, rear CD/DVD player, DVD changer) is selected in the front and rear, the same material is played.

Operation is the same as for the front CD/DVD, refer to page 181.

Notes on CDs/DVDs, refer to page 186.

Music collection*

Music can only be stored and data can only be exported and imported via the front CD/DVD player or the USB interface in the glove compartment.

When music collections are selected in the front and rear, they are played back separately.

Operation is the same as for the front music collection, refer to page 187.

Tone

Only treble and bass can be set in the rear. The settings are made separately for the left and right headphones.

Operation is the same as for the front tone, refer to page 172.

Contacts*

Operation is the same as for the front contacts, refer to page 213.

Navigation*

Route planning can be performed separately on the left and right sides in the rear. Destination guidance can only be started from the front.

Operation is the same as for the front navigation, refer to page 154.

Suggesting a destination

A destination or trip can be sent to the front as a suggestion. The suggestion can be adopted, stored, or declined in the front. This function is not available with the following setting: "Driver control".

1. Enter the destination.
2. "Suggest destination"

BMW Assist*

Operation is the same as for BMW Assist in the front, refer to page 216.

Adjusting

The following settings are available:

- "Rear displays"
- "Language/Units": language can be set globally for all screens.
- "Tone"
- If necessary, "Climate"

Vehicle information*

Computer content can be displayed. Operation is only possible in the front.

Options menu

The split screen is not available and there is no integrated Owner's Manual.

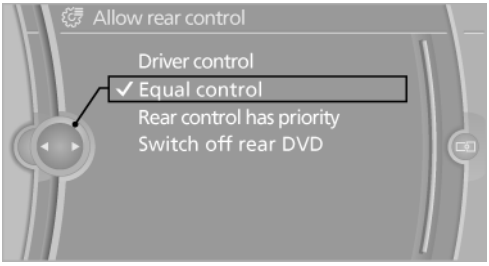
Operation is the same as for the front menu options, refer to page 21.

Enabling

Enabling operation in the rear

Only possible via the iDrive in the front.

1. "Settings"
2. "Allow rear control"
3. Select the desired priority.



Priority options

The driver has priority

- The source selected via iDrive in the front is output on the vehicle loudspeakers and can be selected but not operated from the rear. Other audio or video sources can be operated.
- Sound can only be output in the rear via headphones.
- The source that is to be displayed in the rear can be set via the iDrive in the front.

To set the source in the rear via the iDrive in the front:

1. Open "Options".
2. "Select rear source"
3. Select the desired audio or video source.

Same priority

- All audio and video sources can be operated via the iDrive in the front and rear.
- Sound is output in the rear via headphones: the source selected via the iDrive in the front is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.
- Sound is output via loudspeakers: the source selected last via the iDrive in the front or rear is output via the vehicle loudspeakers.

The rear has priority

- When the source selected in the rear is played on headphones, it can be selected but not operated via iDrive in the front. Other audio or video sources can be operated.
- Sound is output in the rear via headphones: the source selected via the iDrive in the front is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.
- Sound is output via loudspeakers: the source selected in the rear is output on the vehicle loudspeakers. Audio or video sources cannot be selected via the iDrive in the front.

Switching off the rear DVD

- Rear entertainment is switched off.
- To switch rear entertainment back on: select a different priority via the iDrive in the front and switch on the system, refer to page 196.

Headphones, vehicle loudspeakers

Connecting the headphones

Normal headphones

Connect via the jack 1/8"/3.5 mm, refer to page 196, on the rear CD/DVD player.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Infrared headphones

Connection via the infrared interface on the lower edge of the screen.

Fitting infrared headphones and information on which headphones are supported can be obtained from your service center.

When using infrared headphones, ensure that the connection between the headphones and the infrared interface is not disrupted:

- Do not place an obstacle between the interface and headphones.
- Do not cover the interface.
- Do not scratch the interface.

Fold up display screens for interference-free reception.

Unfavorable light conditions such as bright ambient light can impair reception.

Sound output on the headphones or vehicle loudspeakers

Operation is only possible in the rear.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Headphones" or "Loudspeakers"

With the following setting, sound output in the rear is not possible via the vehicle speakers: "Driver control".

External devices

General information

External audio and video devices and digital cameras can be connected to cinch sockets, refer to page 196, on the CD/DVD player. Operation takes place on the external device.

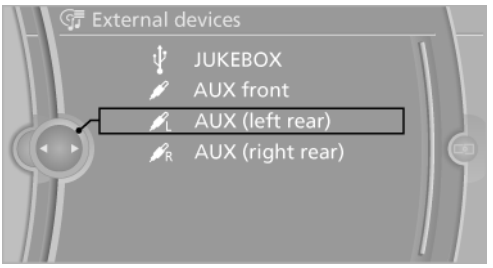
Due to the large number of different audio and video devices available on the market, it cannot be ensured that every audio and video device will be displayed correctly on the screen.

Connecting an external device

1. Fold down the cover in front of the cinch sockets on the CD/DVD player.
2. Connect the external device to the RCA sockets.
   - Video: yellow socket.
   - Audio: white and red socket.

Starting playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the L or R symbol.



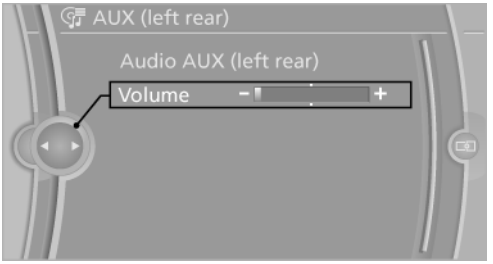
Volume

The volume of the sound output is dependent on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

Adjusting the volume

The volume can only be adjusted if no external video device is connected.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the L or R symbol.
4. "Volume"



5. Turn the controller until the desired volume is set and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

What to do if...

- Only a black screen is visible.

  Switch on the system.

- There are no options available on the screen.

  Replace remote control batteries.

  With Professional rear seat entertainment toggle between screens if necessary.

- Radio stations or TV channels are grayed out and can not be selected.

  Function is limited due to the selected priority. Change priority.

- The DVD does not play.

  Playback does not begin automatically. Start DVD manually, refer to page 183.

- The volume of the rear vehicle speakers cannot be adjusted.

  Sound in the rear is output via the headphones. Change priority if necessary and output sound via vehicle speakers.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Communication

All of the options available to you for mobile communication with family, friends, business partners, and service providers are described in this chapter.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Telephone*

At a glance

The concept

After the mobile phone is paired once with the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using the iDrive, the steering wheel buttons and spoken instructions.

A paired mobile phone is automatically detected as soon as it is located inside the vehicle, when the ignition is switched on.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired.

Using the mobile phone while driving

Make entries only when traffic and road conditions allow. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users.◄

Snap-in adapter*

The snap-in adapter is used to:

- Hold the mobile phone.
- Recharge the battery.
- Connect the mobile phone to an outside antenna of the vehicle.

  This provides for better network reception and consistent sound quality.

Approved mobile phones

Inquire with your service center which mobile phones containing a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package. Additional information can be found at www.bmw.com/bluetooth.

These approved mobile phones with a certain software version, support the vehicle functions described below.

Malfunctions may occur with other mobile phones or software versions.

Do not operate a mobile phone that is connected to the vehicle on the mobile phone keypad, as this may lead to a malfunction.

Pairing/unpairing the mobile phone

Requirements

- The mobile phone is suitable.
- The mobile phone is ready for operation.
- Bluetooth is activated in the vehicle, refer to page 205, and on the mobile phone.
- Bluetooth presettings may need to be made on the mobile phone, e.g., for a connection without confirmation or visibility, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.
- A number with at least four and a maximum of 16 digits is defined as the Bluetooth passkey. It is only required once for pairing.
- The ignition is switched on.

Pairing and connecting

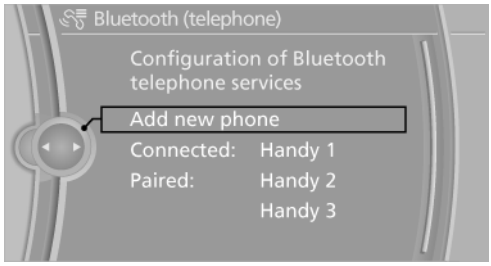
Pairing the mobile phone

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users, only pair the mobile phone while the vehicle is stationary.◄

Pair the vehicle entirely on the front or rear Control Display.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"
3. "Add new phone"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.



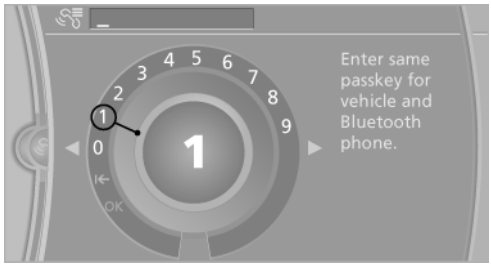
4. To perform additional steps on the mobile phone, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions: for instance, search for or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.

5. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

   You are prompted by the iDrive or mobile phone to enter the same Bluetooth passkey.

6. Enter the passkey and confirm.



If the pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

Four mobile phones can be paired with the vehicle at once.

If pairing was unsuccessful: what to do if, refer to page 206.

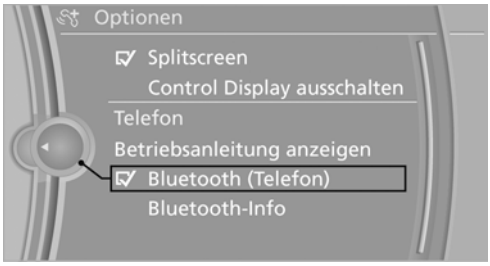
Following the initial pairing

- The mobile phone is detected/connected in the vehicle within 2 minutes if the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- After they have been identified, phone book entries are transferred from the SIM card and/or mobile phone to the vehicle; this depends on the mobile phone.
- Four mobile phones can be paired.
- Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g., authorization or a secure connection; refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth

Bluetooth is not permitted everywhere. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth"



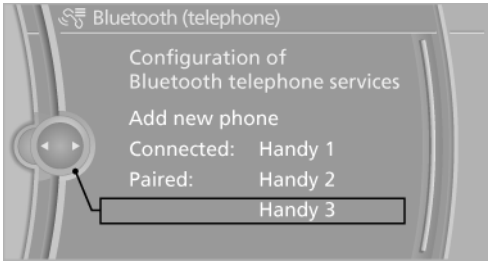
Connecting a particular mobile phone

If more than one mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the mobile phone at the top of the list is connected. A different mobile phone can be connected by selecting it.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"

   All paired mobile phones are listed.

3. Select the mobile phone that is to be connected.

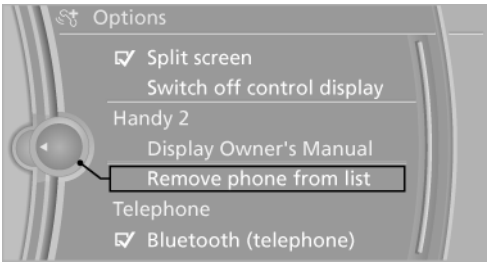


Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Unpairing the mobile phone

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth (telephone)"

   All paired mobile phones are listed.
3. Highlight the mobile phone that is to be unpaired.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Remove phone from list"



What to do if...

Not all phone book entries are displayed.

- Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete; note the display in the status field.
- It may only be possible to transmit the phone book entries on the SIM card* or the mobile phone.
- It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- The number of phone book entries to be stored is too high.

The mobile phone cannot be paired.

- Is the mobile phone supported? For information, contact your service center.
- Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and via iDrive.
- Did it take longer than 30 seconds to enter the passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.
- Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone? If so, delete the connections with other devices on the mobile phone.
- The mobile phone no longer reacts? Switch the mobile phone off and on again.
- Repeat the pairing procedure.
- If all items on the list have been checked and the mobile phone still cannot be paired, please contact Customer Relations.

Controls

Incoming call

Receiving calls

If the number of the caller is stored in the phone book and is transmitted by the network, the name of the contact is displayed.

Accepting a call

Via the button on the steering wheel

Press the button.

Via the instrument cluster

"Accept"

Via the iDrive

"Accept"

Rejecting a call

Via the instrument cluster

"Reject"

Via the iDrive

"Reject"

Ending a call

Via the button on the steering wheel

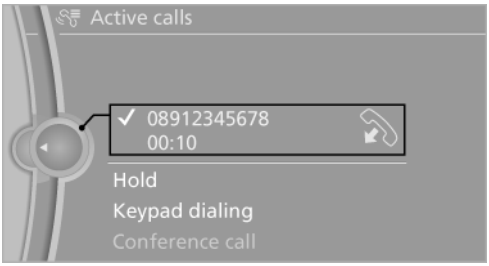
Press the button.

Via the instrument cluster

"End call"

Via the iDrive

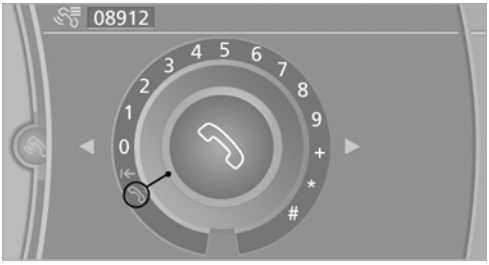
1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. Select an active call.



Entering a phone number

Dialing a number

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Select the symbol.



The phone number can also be entered by voice.

Calls with multiple parties

General information

You can switch between calls and connect two calls to a single conference call. These functions must be supported by the mobile phone and service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function might have to be activated by the service provider and the mobile phone must be adjusted accordingly.

If a second call comes in during an active call, you will hear a call waiting signal.

"Accept"

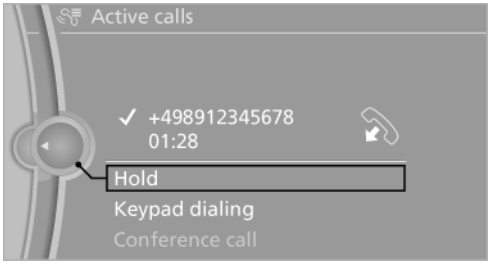
The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a second call

Establish an additional call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Hold"

   The existing call is put on hold.



4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

Switching between two calls, hold call

Active call: indicated by a red handset.

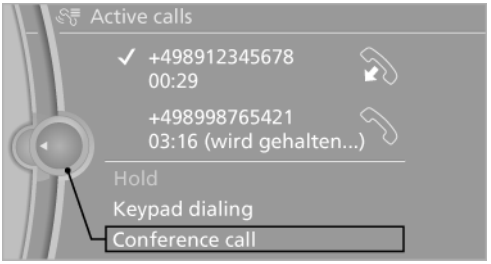
Call on hold: indicated by a green handset.

To switch to the call on hold, select this handset.

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"



When terminating a conference call, both calls are ended. If one call is terminated by another party, the other call can be continued.

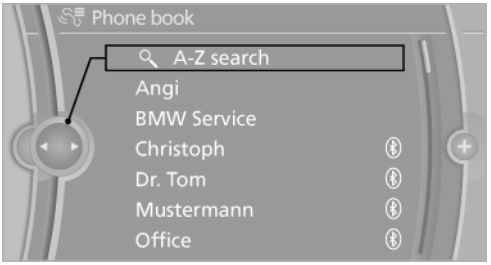
Phone book

Displays

The phone book accesses the contacts and shows all contacts for which a phone number has been stored. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

All contacts with a phone number are displayed. A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts, refer to page 213.



Calling a contact

1. Select the desired contact.

   Select the symbol. Contact with one phone number. The connection is being established.
2. Select the symbol. Contact with more than one phone number. Select the phone number, the connection is being established.

A telephone call is not possible, the mobile phone has no coverage or no network or a Service Request is active.

Editing a contact

Change the entries in "Contacts". When a contact is changed, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

Redialing

General information

The eight phone numbers dialed last are displayed.

Dialing the number via the instrument cluster

This is possible when there is no active call.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Select the desired phone number.

The connection is established.

Dialing the number via the iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. "Redial"
3. Select the desired entry.

The connection is established.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Deleting a single entry or all entries

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

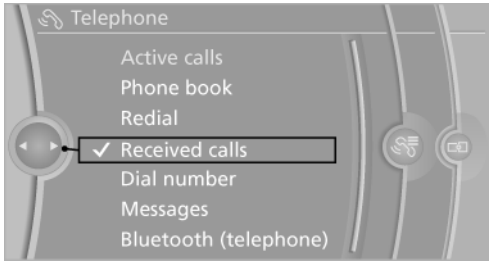
1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other"
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. If necessary. "Store contact".

Received calls

Displaying calls

The 20 calls that were last received are displayed.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"



Calling a number from the list

Selecting an entry.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list"

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other"
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. If necessary. "Store contact".

Messages

Display of different messages:

- My Info messages from the BMW Assist portal.
- Message from the Concierge service, refer to page 217.

MyInfo

Starting destination guidance

1. Select the message.
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."

Dialing the number in the message

1. Select the message.
2. "Call"

Message from the Concierge service

Using an address in destination guidance

1. Select the message.
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest."

3. Start destination guidance, if necessary.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Dialing the number in the message

1. Select the message.
2. "Call"

Storing an address

1. Select the message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Deleting messages

1. Highlight the message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete message" or "Delete all messages"

Hands-free system

General information

Calls that are being made on the hands-free system can be continued on the mobile phone and vice versa.

From the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Calls that were begun outside of the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be continued on the hands-free system with the ignition switched on.

Depending on the mobile phone, the system automatically switches to the hands-free system.

If the system does not switch over automatically, follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

From the hands-free system to the mobile phone

Calls that are made on the hands-free system can in some cases be continued on the mobile phone; this depends on the mobile phone.

Follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Voice operation*

The concept

- The mobile phone can be operated without taking your hands from the steering wheel.
- In many cases, the entries are accompanied by announcements or questions.
- ›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

Using voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Say the command.

Terminating the voice activation system

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Having possible commands read aloud

Press the button. ›Help‹. Possible commands are announced.

The digits from zero to nine are recognized. The digits can be spoken separately or combined in a sequence to accelerate the entry.

Using alternative commands

In many cases, the system is able to recognize several commands to execute the same function, such as the following:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹

Example: dialing a phone number

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Dial number‹

   The system says: »Please say the number«

3. E.g., ›123 456 790‹
   The system says: »123 456 790. Continue? «
4. ›Dial number‹
   The system says: »Dialing number«

Calling

Dialing a phone number

1. ›Dial number‹
2. Say the phone number.
3. ›Dial‹

Correcting the phone number

The sequence of digits can be deleted after the system has repeated the digits.

›Correct number‹

The command can be repeated as often as necessary.

Deleting a phone number

›Delete‹

All digits entered up to that point are deleted.

Redialing

›Redial‹

Voice phone book*

Depending on how your vehicle is equipped, it may be necessary to create your own voice phone book.

The entries must be entered using voice activation and are separate from the memory in the mobile phone. Up to 50 entries can be set up.

Saving an entry

1. ›Save name‹
2. Say the name. Do not exceed the speaking duration of approx. 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number after being prompted to do so by the system.
4. ›Save‹

Deleting an entry

1. ›Delete name‹
2. Say the name after being prompted to do so.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Deleting all entries

1. ›Delete phone book‹
   The dialog for deleting the phone book is opened.
2. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the query again with ›Yes‹.

Reading and selecting entries

1. ›Read phone book‹
   The dialog for reading the phone book is opened.
2. Say ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read.

Selecting an entry

1. ›Dial name‹
2. Say the name after being prompted to do so.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Adjusting the volume

Turn the knob during an announcement.

- ▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button*, refer to page 246, in the vicinity of the interior mirror.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Environmental conditions

- Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- Keep the doors and windows closed to prevent noise interference.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

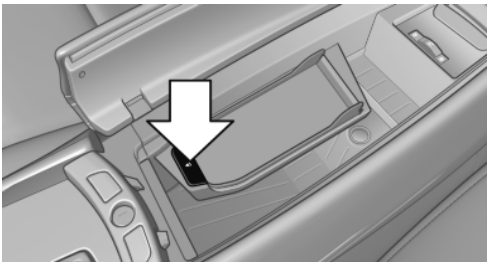
Snap-in adapter*

Installation position

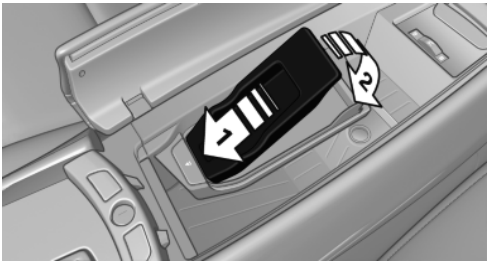
In the center armrest.

Inserting the snap-in adapter

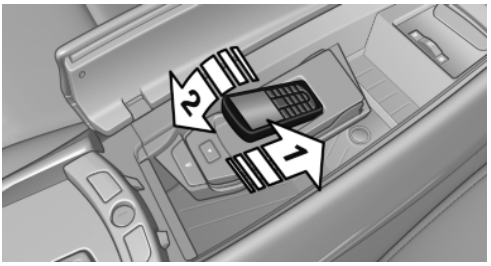
1. Press the button and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front, arrow 1, and press down, arrow 2, until it engages.

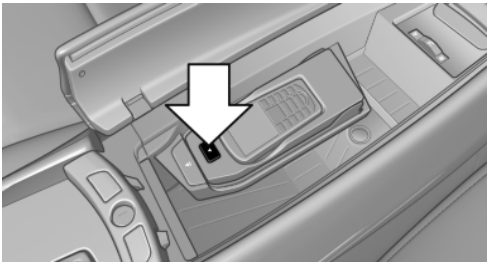


Inserting the mobile phone



1. Depending on the mobile phone, remove the protective cap from the antenna connector of the mobile phone.
2. Slide the mobile phone with the buttons facing up in the direction of the electrical connections, arrow 1, and push downward, arrow 2 until it engages.

Removing the mobile phone



Press the button and remove the mobile phone.

Contacts

General information

Contacts can be created and edited. The contacts from the mobile phone are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. The addresses can be adopted as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed directly.

New contact

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"

3. The entry fields are still filled with the previous entries: "Delete input fields"
4. Fill in the entry fields: select the symbol next to the entry field.

5. Enter the text, refer to page 24.
6. When equipped with a navigation system: Enter the address. Only addresses contained in the navigation data in the vehicle can be entered. This ensures that destination guidance is possible for all addresses.
7. If necessary, "Store".
8. "Store contact in vehicle"

Specifying a contact as the home address

A contact can be stored as the home address. It is placed at the top of "My contacts".

1. "Home"
2. Create a contact.

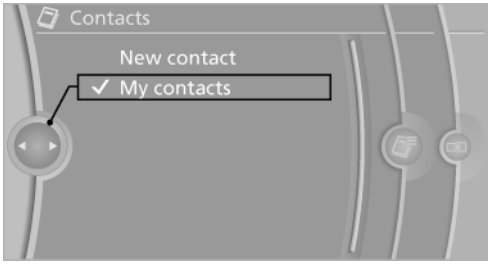
My contacts

General information

A list of all contacts in the vehicle and mobile phone.

Displaying contacts

1. "Contacts"
2. "My contacts"



All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. An A-Z search is offered, refer to page 24, if there are 30 or more contacts.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
Ⓐ	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
ᛒ	Mobile phone

Displaying the detailed view

Select the desired contact.

All fields that have been filled in for that contact are displayed.

Selecting the name display

Names can be displayed in a different order.

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display: last, first name" or "Display: first, last name"

Depending on how the contacts were stored on your mobile phone, the names may be displayed differently than the display selected.

Selecting the contact as a navigation destination*

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. Select the desired address.

When contacts from the mobile phone are used, the address may need to be matched to the navigation data contained in the vehicle. In this case:

Correct the address.

Checking the address as a destination*

An address that is to be used for destination guidance must match the navigation data contained in the vehicle. The address can be checked for this purpose.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address if necessary.

If the address is corrected and stored, a copy of it is stored in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone.

Dialing phone numbers*

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. Select the desired phone number.

The connection is established.

Editing a contact

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. "Edit contact"

4. Change the entries.
5. Move the controller to the left.
6. "Yes"

If a contact from the mobile phone is edited, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle, and only this copy is displayed. Under certain circumstances, a contact entry with the same name is created.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone cannot be deleted.

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.

3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts".

Exporting/importing contacts

Contacts can be exported and imported via the Personal Profile, refer to page 33.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

BMW Assist

BMW Assist*

General information

BMW Assist provides you with various services, for instance, transmission of the position data of your vehicle to the BMW Assist Response Center if an Emergency Request* is initiated.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed upon contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without your having to visit a service center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist services will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a service center after you sign a new contract.

Requirements

- The installed BMW Assist system is logged in to a wireless communications network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- To activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.
- The BMW Assist service contract was signed with your service center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. Enabling must have been completed.
- BMW Assist is activated.

Services offered

- Emergency Request: when you press the SOS button, a connection to the BMW Assist Response Center is established. The BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- Automatic Collision Notification: under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance: BMW Roadside Assistance* can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle and position data are transmitted in the process.
- Customer Relations: connection with Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.
- TeleService: data on your vehicle's service status or required inspections are transmitted to your service center, either automatically before a service due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- Remote Door Unlock: the BMW Assist Response Center provides assistance if, for example, the remote control is not available and the vehicle needs to be opened.
- Stolen Vehicle Recovery: after you report that your vehicle was stolen to the police, the BMW Assist Response Center can determine its position.
- In addition to these services, the optional Convenience Plan offers a Concierge service and information for route planning, traffic, and weather. A limited number of calls can be made via the BMW Assist Response Center with Critical Calling if, for example, the mobile phone is not available or discharged.

  Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center.
- You can also access the BMW Assist Concierge service via the Internet.

TeleService*

General information

TeleService supports communication with your service center.

- Data on the vehicle's service requirements can be sent directly to the service center. In this way, the service center can plan its work in advance. This shortens the duration of the service appointment.
- In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition can be sent directly to Roadside Assistance.
- The service varies by country.
- Connection costs may ensue.
- Services may be restricted abroad.

Requirements

- BMW Assist is activated.
- Wireless reception is available.
- The engine is running.

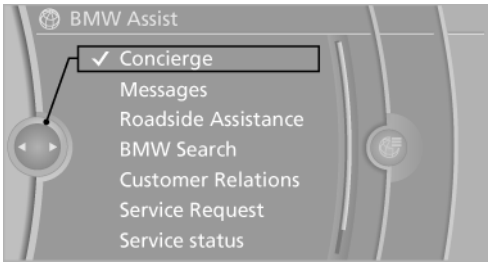
Concierge service*

General information

The BMW Assist Concierge service offers information on events, gas stations or hotels, and provides phone numbers and addresses. Hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Assist Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional Convenience Plan.

Starting the Concierge service

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Concierge"



3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established with the BMW Assist Concierge service. Phone numbers and addresses can be transmitted to the vehicle.

Open the message via the message list, refer to page 209.

Roadside Assistance

At a glance

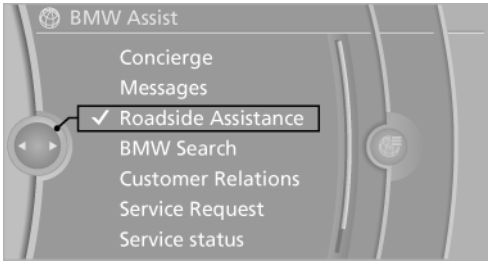
BMW Roadside Assistance* can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

Starting Roadside Assistance

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"

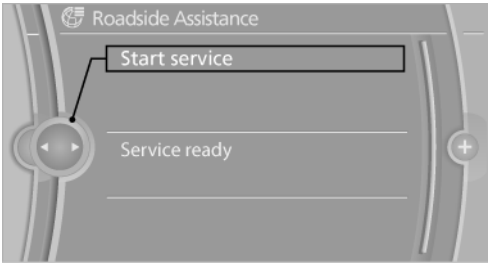
   The Roadside Assistance number is displayed. If the mobile phone* is paired, a connection is established to Roadside Assistance.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"
3. "Start service"



TeleService Diagnosis*

TeleService Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that are important for vehicle diagnosis. These data are transmitted automatically.

After the data are transmitted, the voice connection to Roadside Assistance is re-established.

TeleService Help*

TeleService Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

TeleService Help can be started after a prompt by Roadside Assistance and the termination of the voice connection.

Starting TeleService Help

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. The engine is running.
4. "TeleService Help"

After completion of TeleService Help, a voice connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

Activating BMW Assist*

General information

If the services included in a Assist subscription are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

Activating

1. Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. "Activate BMW Assist"

Activation may take several minutes. If another menu is opened, activation continues running in the background.

BMW Search*

At a glance

A business search can be opened via BMW Search.

License conditions

This product contains NetFront Browser software of ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD., in Japan and other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

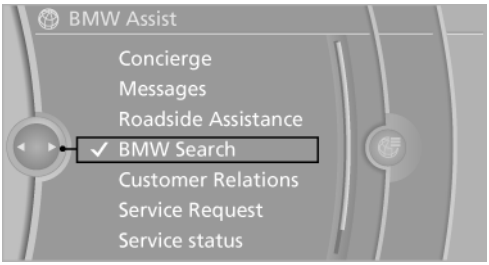
Requirements

- Subscription to the optional Convenience Plan.
- The date setting, refer to page 80, on the Control Display is current.
- The vehicle is located within wireless network coverage.

Starting BMW Search

1. "BMW Assist"

2. "BMW Search"



3. If necessary, "OK".

The BMW Search home page is displayed.

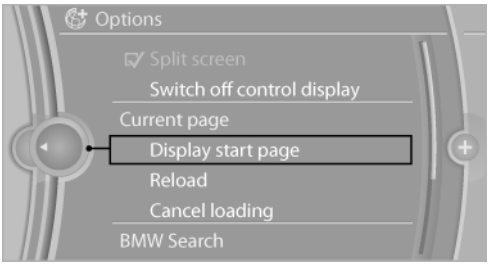
Using BMW Search

To start a search:

- ▷ Turn the controller to highlight an element.
- ▷ Press the controller to display an element.

Opening the start page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Display start page"



Loading a new page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Reload"

Cancel

1. Open "Options".
2. "Cancel loading"

Customer Relations

At a glance

Contact Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

Calling Customer Relations

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"

The Customer Relations phone number is displayed. If the mobile phone* is paired, a connection is established to Customer Relations.

Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"
3. "Start service"

Service Request*

At a glance

Sends information to your service partner to request the arrangement of a service appointment. The TeleService data is transmitted during a Service Request. If possible, your service partner will establish contact with you.

Starting a Service Request

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Service Request"

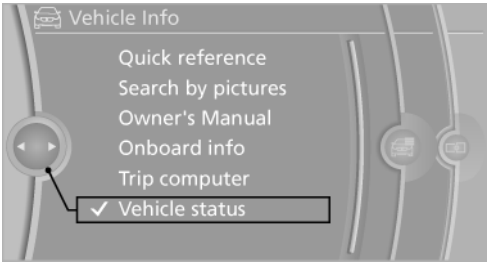
3. "Start service"

Automatic Service Request*

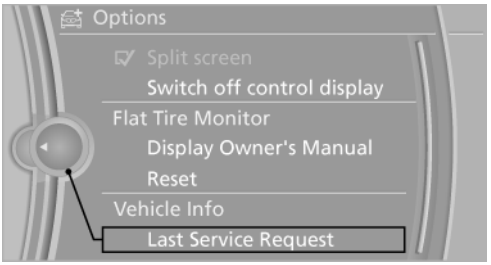
The TeleService data necessary for servicing the vehicle are automatically sent to your service partner prior to the service deadline. If possible, the service partner will contact you and a service appointment can be arranged.

To check when your service partner was notified:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"



Data transfer*

The status of the data transfer is displayed.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Data transfer"

Services status*

Displaying available services

Display of all services available in the vehicle.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Service status"
3. "Available services"

Activating BMW Assist

If the services included in a Assist subscription are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

"Activate BMW Assist"

Activating TeleService

TeleService may need to be activated in the vehicle.

"Activate TeleService"

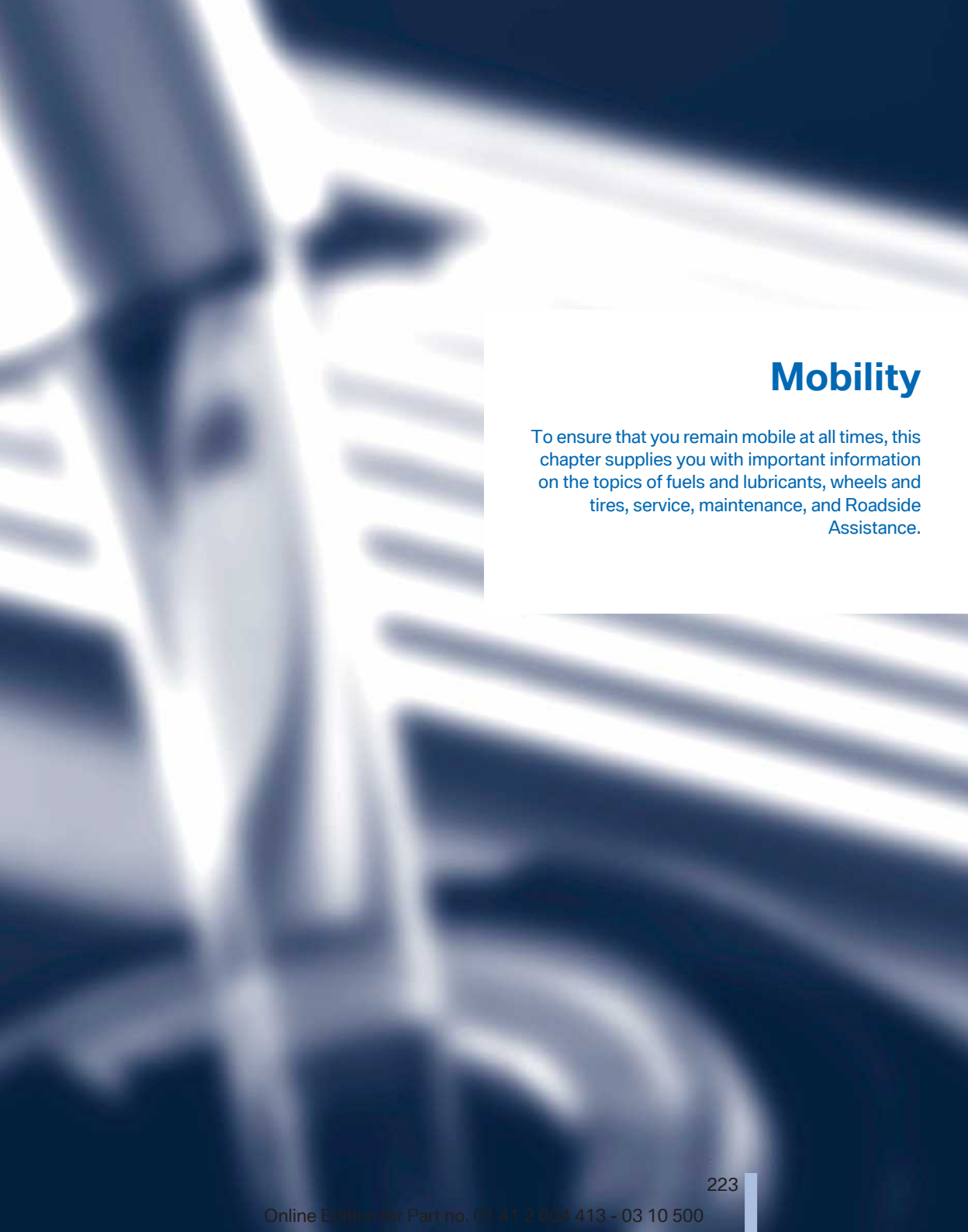
Deactivating TeleService

Even if the services of TeleService have been deactivated, a voice connection to Roadside Assistance is still possible.

"Deactivate TeleService"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500



Mobility

To ensure that you remain mobile at all times, this chapter supplies you with important information on the topics of fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance, and Roadside Assistance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

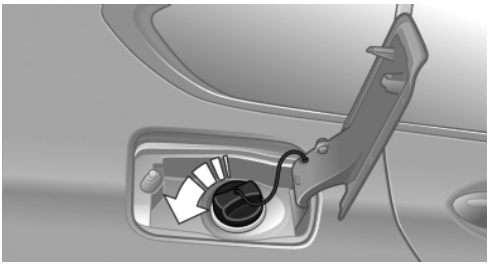
Refueling

Fuel cap

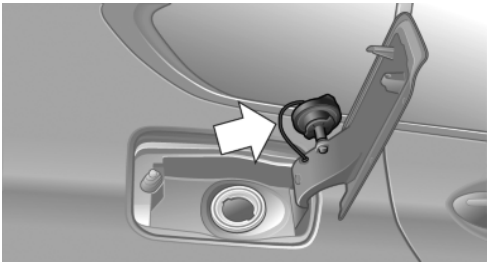
Opening

1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.

2. Turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

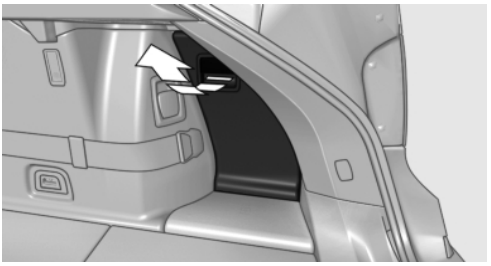
Do not pinch the retaining strap attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape.

A message is displayed if the cap is loose or missing.◂

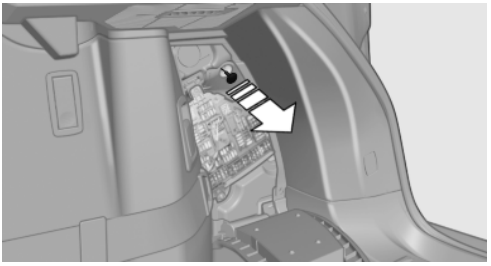
Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

In the event of an electrical malfunction, for example.

1. Open the cover on the right side trim.



2. Pull the green knob with the fuel pump symbol. This releases the fuel filler flap.



Observe the following when refueling

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Handling fuels

Obey safety regulations posted at the gas station.◂

Fuel tank capacity

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 18.5 US gal/70 liters

Refuel promptly

Refuel below a range of 30 miles/50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage may occur.◄

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Fuel

Fuel quality

Refuel with unleaded fuel only

Do not use leaded fuel as this would permanently damage the catalytic converter.◄

Do not refuel with ethanol

Do not refuel with E85, i.e., fuel with an ethanol content of 85 %, or with Flex Fuel, as this would damage the engine and fuel supply system.◄

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 91 or AKI 89

BMW recommends AKI 91 or 89.

Gasoline with lower AKI

The minimum AKI Rating is 89.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures.

This has no effect on the engine life.

Minimum fuel grade

Do not use any gasoline below the minimum specified fuel grade; otherwise, engine damage may occur.◄

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada.

Fuels containing up to and including 10 % ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8 % oxygen by weight, that is, 15 % MTBE or 3 % methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

Minimum fuel grade

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in driveability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.

Should you encounter driveability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in unscheduled maintenance.◄

BMW recommends BP fuels

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure

Safety information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Road safety.
- Driving comfort.

Checking the pressure

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When the tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure is higher.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed: at least twice a month and before a long trip. If you fail to observe this precaution, you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that may not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident.◄

After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Pressure specifications

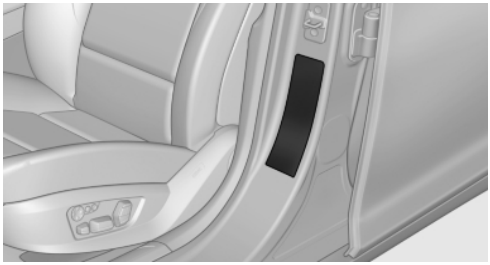
The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 227, contains all pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. Pressure specifications apply to approved tire sizes and recommended tire brands. This information can be obtained from your service center.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- Vehicle load.
- Maximum allowable driving speed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 227, and adjust as necessary.



These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Maximum permissible speed

Do not exceed 100 mph/160 km/h; otherwise, tire damage and accidents may result.◄

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa	
Specifications in psi/kilopascal with cold tires		
F.: 245/45 R 19 98 Y	2.2 / 32	-
R.: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	-	2.4 / 35
F.: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
R.: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa	
F.: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL R.: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	2.6 / 38 -	- 3.0 / 44
245/50 R 18 100 Y 245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S 245/50 R 18 100 H M +S	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL	2.4 / 35	2.6 / 38

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

Speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◄

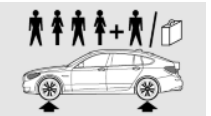
Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

With partial load

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa	
Specifications in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires		
F.: 245/45 R 19 98 Y R.: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.4 / 35
F.: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL R.: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	2.4 / 35 -	- 2.6 / 38

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa	
F.: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL R.: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	2.6 / 38 -	- 3.0 / 44
245/50 R 18 100 Y 245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S 245/50 R 18 100 H M +S	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL	2.4 / 35	2.6 / 38

With full load

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa	
Specifications in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires		
F.: 245/45 R 19 98 Y R.: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	2.3 / 33 -	- 2.5 / 36
F.: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL R.: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	2.5 / 36 -	- 2.8 / 41
F.: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL R.: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	2.6 / 38 -	- 3.0 / 44
245/50 R 18 100 Y 245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S 245/50 R 18 100 H M +S	2.9 / 42	3.2 / 46
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL	2.7 / 39	3.2 / 46

Tire identification marks

Tire size

255/50 R 19 103 Y

255: nominal width in mm

50: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

19: rim diameter in inches

103: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Speed letter

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 3508

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

3508: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

DOT ... 3508: the tire was manufactured in the 35th week in 2008.

Recommendation: regardless of wear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Temperature grade for this tire

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed.◄

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 232, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

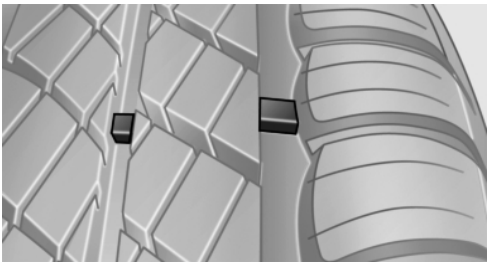
There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tread depth is less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

Inspect your tires often for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle defects:

- Unusual vibrations during driving.
- Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

In case of tire damage

If there are indications of tire damage, reduce your speed immediately and have the wheels and tires checked right away; otherwise, there is the increased risk of an accident.

Drive carefully to the next service center or tire shop.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed.◄

Repair of tire damage

For safety reasons, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you do not have damaged tires repaired; they should be replaced. Otherwise, damage can occur as a result.◄

Tire age

Recommendation

regardless of wear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

On the sidewall:

DOT ... 3508: the tire was manufactured in the 35th week in 2008.

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting

Information on mounting tires

Have mounting and balancing performed only by a service center or tire specialist.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◄

Wheel and tire combination

Information on the correct wheel-tire combination and rim versions for your vehicle can be obtained from your service center.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Approved wheels and tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been approved for your particular vehicle model.

For example, despite having the same official size ratings, variations can lead to body contact and with it, the risk of severe accidents.

The manufacturer of your vehicle cannot evaluate non-approved wheels and tires to determine if they are suited for use, and therefore cannot ensure the operating safety of the vehicle if they are mounted.◄

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

With proper use, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling.

Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Retreaded tires

Possibly substantial variations in the design and age of the tire casing structures can limit service life and have a negative impact on road safety.◄

Winter tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends winter tires for winter roads or at temperatures below +45 °F/+7 °C.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires do provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then display a corresponding sign in the field of

vision. You can obtain this sign from the tire specialist or from your service center.

Maximum speed for winter tires

Do not exceed the maximum speed for the winter tires; otherwise, tire damage and accidents can occur.◄

Run-flat tires

For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

Rotating wheels between axles

The manufacturer of your vehicle advises against swapping wheels between the front and rear axles.

This can impair the handling characteristics.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Run-flat tires

Label

RSC label on the tire sidewall.

The wheels are composed of special rims and tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a pressure loss.

Continued driving with damaged tires, refer to page 96.

Changing run-flat tires

For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Your service center will be glad to advise you.

Snow chains

Fine-link snow chains

Only certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of your vehicle, classified as road-safe and recommended.

Consult your service center for more information.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the same tire size:

- 245/50 R 18.
- 245/45 R 19.

Follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Retighten as needed according to the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control if necessary.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Snow chain detection*

The concept

When using snow chains, you should set whether you are driving with or without snow chains via the iDrive.

The snow chain detection system supports you by automatically showing the detected state on the Control Display.

When snow chains are in use, the rear axle steering of the Integral Active Steering* is deactivated automatically.

At speeds above the maximum allowable speed with snow chains of 30 mph/50 km/h, the rear axle steering is activated again automatically.

Activating the status

1. "Settings"
2. "Tire chains"
3. "Tire chains installed"

Automatic detection

If functioning properly:

▷ Snow chains are mounted. The setting is not activated ☐ .

After you drive a short distance, the message is shown on the Control Display and the status is activated automatically.

Confirm the automatic activation.

▷ Snow chains are not mounted. The setting is activated ☑ .

At speeds above 30 mph/50 km/h, a warning lamp lights up and a message is displayed. Deactivate the status manually.

If not functioning properly:

▷ Snow chains are mounted. The setting is not activated ☐ .

A message does not appear on the Control Display.

The automatic detection system is malfunctioning. Activate the status manually.

Activating/deactivating rear axle steering

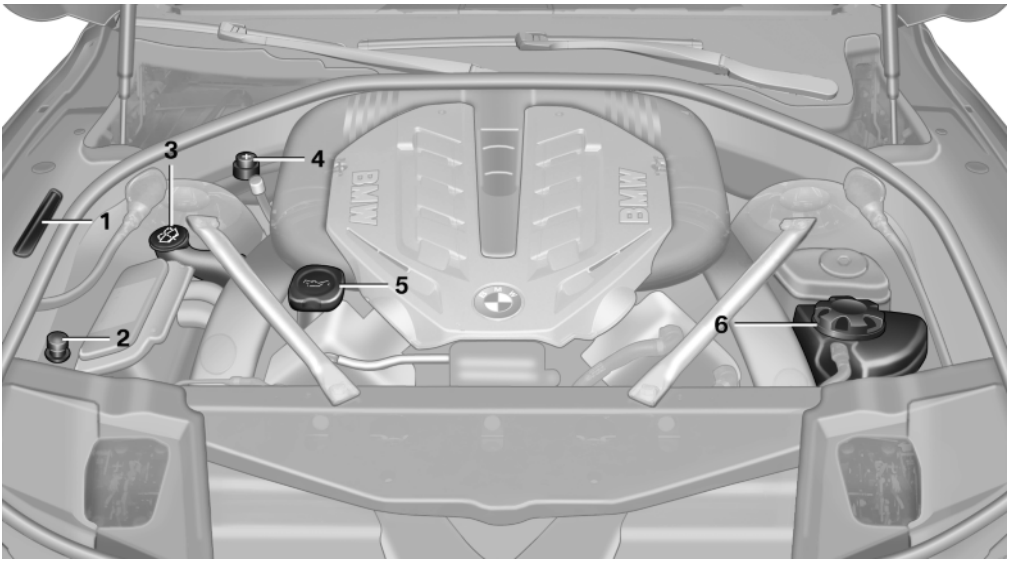
If the status indicating that snow chains are in use is activated, the rear axle steering is deactivated automatically.

At speeds above 30 mph/50 km/h, the rear axle steering is activated again, even though snow chains are in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Engine compartment

Important features in the engine compartment



1 Vehicle identification number*
2 Jump starting, negative terminal
3 Washer fluid reservoir
4 Jump starting, positive terminal
5 Oil filler neck
6 Coolant reservoir

Hood

Opening the hood

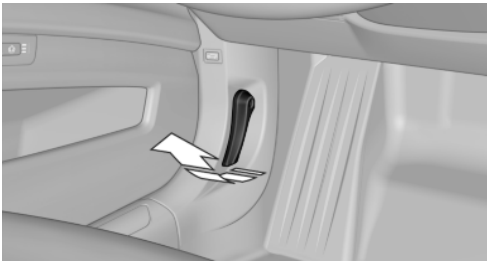
Working in the engine compartment

Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the necessary professional technical training.

If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the vehicle performed only by a service center.

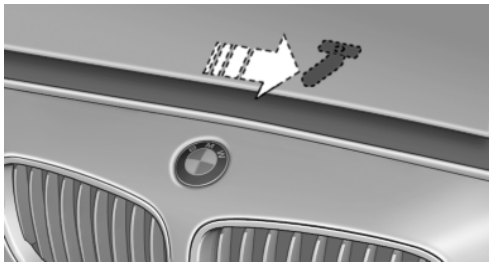
If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◄

1. Pull the lever.

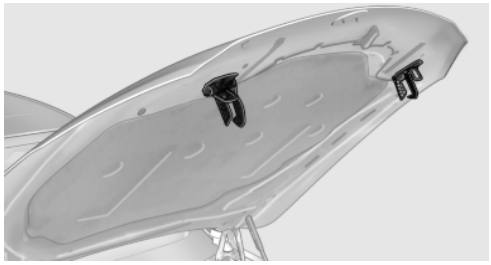


Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

2. Press the release handle and open the hood.



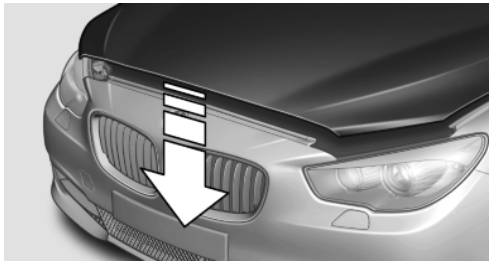
3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.



Danger of injury when the hood is open

There is a danger of injury from protruding parts when the hood is open.◄

Closing the hood



Let the hood drop from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm and push down on it to lock it fully.

The hood must audibly engage on both sides.

Hood open when driving

If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving, pull over immediately and close it securely.◄

Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Engine oil

Checking the oil level

The concept

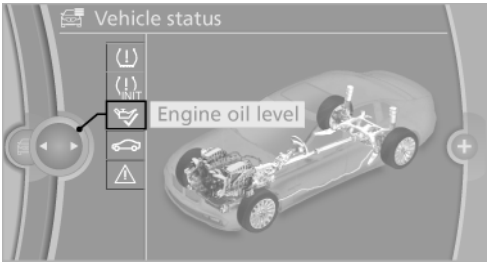
The oil level is monitored electronically and displayed on the Control Display.

Requirements

- The engine must be running and warm after the vehicle has been driven for at least 6 miles/10 km.
- The vehicle is stopped or being driven on a level roadway.

Displaying the oil level

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"



Possible messages

- "Engine oil level OK"
- "Measurement not possible at this time."

  Duration with the engine running: approx. 3 minutes.

  Duration while driving: approx. 5 minutes.
- "Engine oil level below minimum. Add 1 quart!"

  Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.
- "Engine oil level too high! Have this checked."

  Have the vehicle checked immediately.

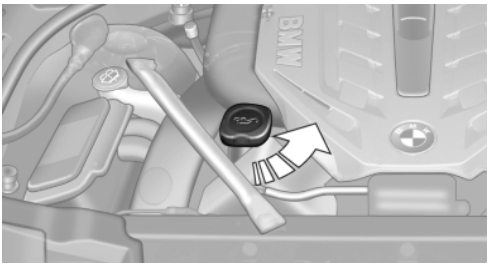
  Too much engine oil

  Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, surplus oil can lead to engine damage.◄
- "Measurement inactive. Have this checked."

  Note the newly calculated remaining mileage until the next oil service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil

Filler neck



When the indicator lights up in the instrument cluster, add 1 US quart/liter of engine oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.

Recommended oil types, refer to page 236

Protect children

Keep oil, grease, etc., out of reach of children and heed the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks.◄

Oil types

Note

No oil additives

Oil additives may lead to engine damage.◄

Approved oil types

Your service center can advise you on which engine oils have been approved by the manufacturer of your vehicle.

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Only use approved BMW High Performance oil.

Approved oils belong to the following viscosity classes: SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40 and SAE 5W-30.

Alternative oil types

If the approved engine oils are not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of another oil with the following specification may be used.

API SM specifications or higher

BMW recommends Castrol

Coolant

General information

Danger of burns from hot engine

Do not open the cooling system while the engine is hot; otherwise, escaping coolant may cause burns.◄

Suitable additives

Only use suitable additives; otherwise, engine damage may occur. The additives are harmful to your health.◄

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your vehicle. Ask your service center for suitable additives.

Coolant level

Have your service center check the coolant level and add coolant, if necessary.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Maintenance

BMW Maintenance System

The system obtains information about the road safety and operational reliability of the vehicle and takes into account aspects such as a timely vehicle check. The aim is to optimize maintenance procedures with a view to reducing the cost of running the vehicle.

Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of your vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service determines the maintenance requirements.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance you need to your user profile.

Details on the service requirements, refer to page 82, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. Your service center will read out this data and suggest the right array of service procedures for your vehicle.

Therefore, hand your service specialist the remote control that you used most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

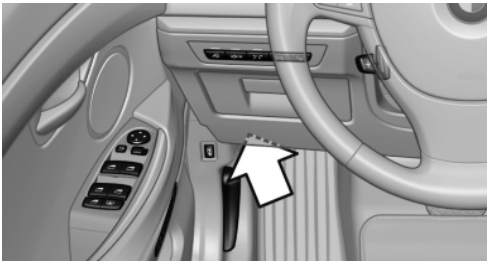
If this occurs, have a service center update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

Maintenance and repair should be performed by your service center. Make sure to have regular maintenance procedures recorded in the vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models, and in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries are proof of regular maintenance.

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnostics



On the driver's side is an OBD socket for checking the primary components in the vehicle emissions.

Emissions values

- The warning lamp lights up:

  The emissions values are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Fuel filler cap

The indicator lamp lights up.

If the fuel cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system may conclude that fuel vapor is escaping. If the cap is then tightened, the display should go out in a short time.

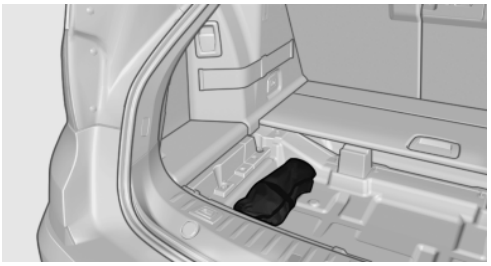
Data memory

Your vehicle records data relating to vehicle operation, faults and user settings. These data are stored in the remote control and can be read out with suitable devices, particularly when the vehicle is serviced. The data obtained in this way provide valuable information for service processes and repair or for optimizing and developing vehicle functions further. In addition, if you signed a service contract for Assist, certain vehicle data can be sent directly from the vehicle to facilitate the desired services.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Replacing components

Tool kit

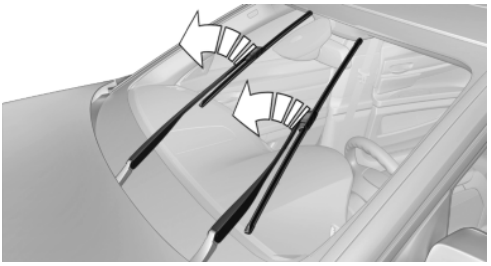


The tool kit is located in the rear compartment in the trunk, refer to page 143.

Wiper blade replacement

Replacing the wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up, refer to page 72, the wiper arms.
2. Fold up the wipers.



3. Position the wiper blade in a horizontal position.
4. Remove the wiper blade toward one side.

Do not fold down the wipers without wiper blades

Do not fold down the wipers if wiper blades have not been installed; this may damage the windshield.◄

Lamp and bulb replacement

General information

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to your service center if you are unfamiliar with them or they are not described here.

You can obtain a selection of replacement bulbs at your service center.

Danger of burns

Only change bulbs when they are cool; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.◄

Working on the lighting system

When working on the lighting system, you should always switch off the lights affected to prevent short circuits.

To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◄

Do not touch the bulbs

Do not touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare hands, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life.

Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◄

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover serve as the light source for controls, display elements and other equipment.

These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Do not remove the covers

Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours; otherwise, irritation of the retina could result.◂

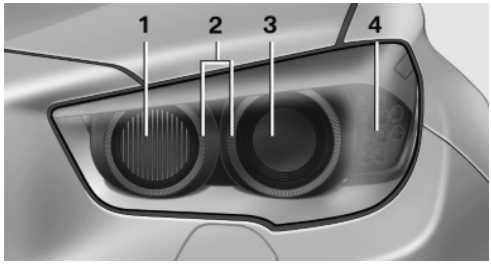
Headlamp glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the external lamps in cool or humid weather. When the light is switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlamp glasses do not need to be changed.

If there is a large amount of moisture, e.g., water droplets form in the lamp, have it checked by your service center.

Front lamps, bulb replacement

At a glance



1 Adaptive light control

2 Parking lamp, daytime running lights*

3 Low beams/high beams

4 Turn signal

Xenon headlamps*

Because of the long life of these bulbs, the likelihood of failure is very low. Switching the lamps on and off frequently shortens their life.

If a xenon bulb fails, switch on the front fog lamps and continue the trip with great care. Comply with local regulations.

Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlamps

Have any work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed only by a service center.

Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is the danger of fatal injuries if work is carried out improperly.◂

For checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.

Turn signals, incl. side indicators

Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 240.

These lamps are made using LED technology.

Please contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

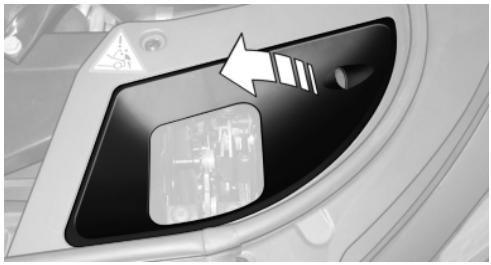
Adaptive light control

Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 240.

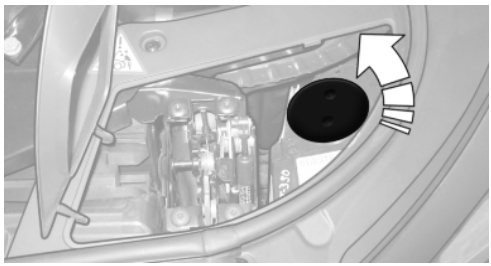
The illustration shows the left side of the engine compartment.

55-watt bulb, H3

1. Open the folding cover in the engine compartment.



2. Turn the cap and remove it.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

3. Unscrew the bulb holder counterclockwise.

4. Remove the bulb and replace it.
5. Insert the new bulb and attach the cover in the reverse order.

Parking lamps

Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 240.

These lamps are made using LED technology.

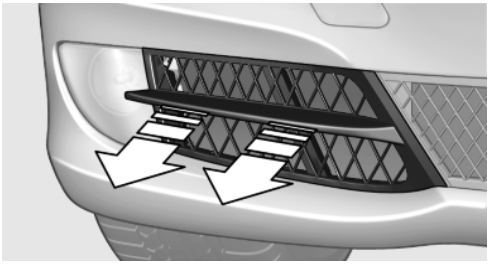
Please contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

Front fog lamps

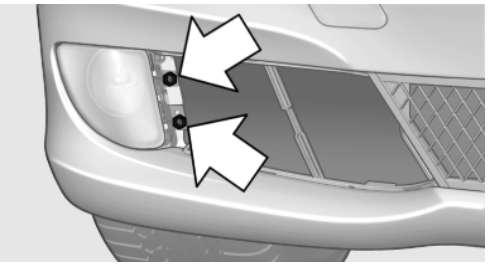
Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 240.

35-watt bulb, H8

1. Carefully pull out the grill toward the front.



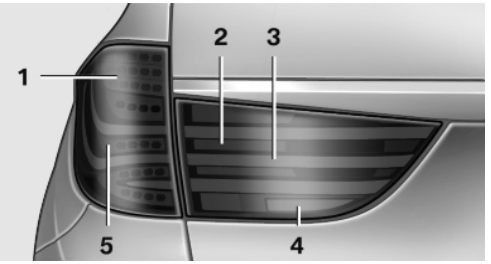
2. Remove the screws.



3. Pull the lamp out toward the front.
4. Remove the bulb and replace it.
5. Insert the new bulb and attach the cover in the reverse order.

Tail lamps, bulb replacement

At a glance



1 Turn signal
2 Backup lamp
3 Rear fog lamp*
4 Tail lamp
5 Brake lamp

Turn signal, brake, tail, and license plate lamps

Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 240.

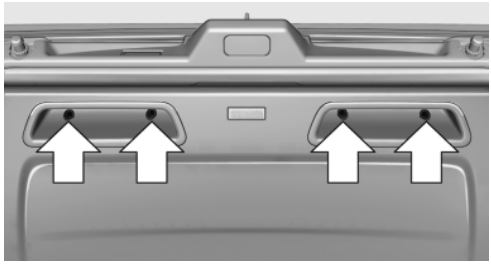
These lights are made using LED technology.

Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

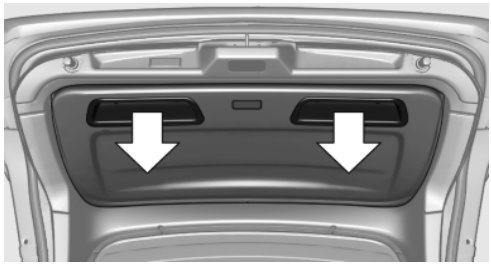
Rear fog lamp and backup lamps in the tailgateBackup lamps in the tailgate

Accessing the lamps

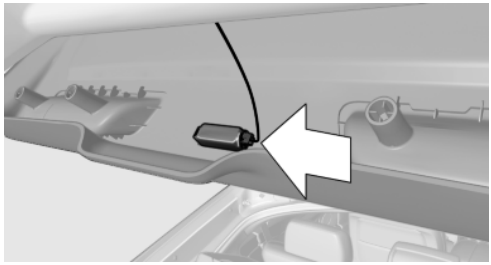
1. Remove the four screws using the screw driver from the tool kit.



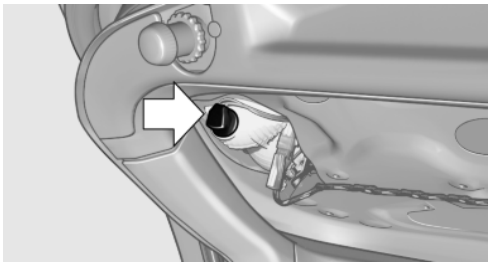
2. Pull down the cover with a firm tug.



3. Pull off the connector toward the left.



4. Replace the bulb.

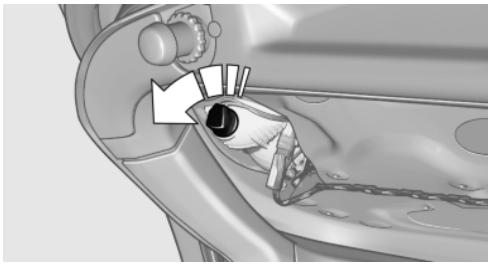


Rear fog lamps

To change the rear fog lamp, contact your service center.

Backup lamp

16-watt bulb, W16W



Turn the bulb, pull it out, and replace it.

Changing wheels

Notes

Your vehicle is equipped with run-flat tires, refer to page 232, as standard equipment.

They do not need to be replaced immediately in the event of a puncture.

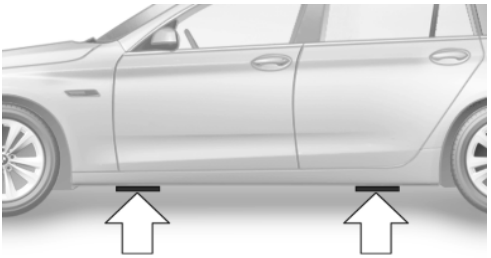
When mounting new tires or changing from summer to winter tires or vice versa, use run-flat tires for your own safety.

No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire.

The tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from your service center.

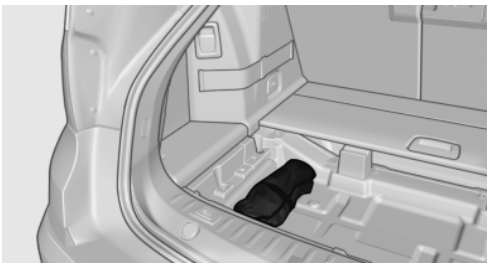
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Jacking points for the vehicle jack

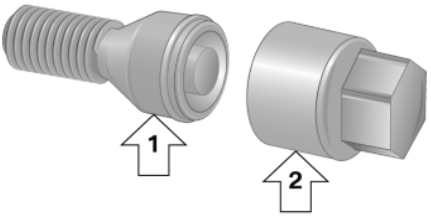


The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located in the positions shown.

Lug bolt lock*



The lug bolt lock is found in the tool kit.



- Lug bolt, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Removing

1. Attach the adapter to the wheel lug.
2. Unscrew the lug bolt.

Remove the adapter after screwing the lug bolt back on.

Vehicle battery

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery.

Your service center will be glad to advise you on questions regarding the battery.

Battery replacement

Use approved vehicle batteries only.

Only use vehicle batteries that have been approved for your vehicle by the manufacturer; otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and systems or functions may not be fully available.◂

After a battery replacement, have the battery registered on the vehicle by your service center to ensure that all comfort functions are fully available.

Charging the battery

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the terminals, refer to page 247, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

Power failure

After a temporary power loss, some equipment needs to be reinitialized.

Individual settings need to be reprogrammed:

- Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory: store the positions again, refer to page 57.
- Time: update, refer to page 80.
- Date: update, refer to page 80.
- Radio station: Save again, refer to page 174.
- Navigation system: wait for the operability of the navigation.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by your service center or take them to a recycling center.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

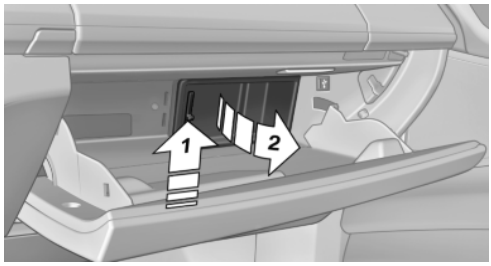
Notes

Replacing fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating; this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◄

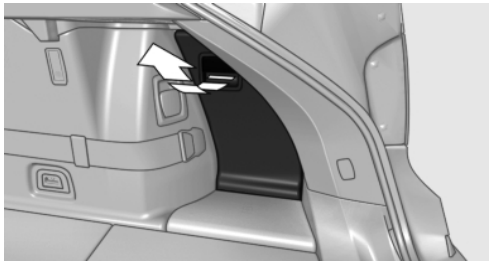
Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box in the trunk.

In the glove compartment



Push the handle up, arrow 1, and open the lid, arrow 2.

In the trunk



Open the cover on the right side trim.

Information on the fuse types and locations is found on a separate sheet.

Breakdown assistance

Hazard warning flashers

The button for the hazard warning flashers is located in the center console.

Emergency Request*

Requirements

- Equipment version with full preparation package mobile phone.

  An Emergency Request can be made, even if no mobile phones are paired with the vehicle.
- BMW Assist is activated, refer to page 218.
- The radio ready state is switched on.
- The BMW Assist system is functional and logged into a wireless communications network.
- The emergency call system is functional.

Only use Emergency Request in an emergency.

Emergency Request not guaranteed

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.◄

Service contract

- After your contract with BMW Assist has expired, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by the service center without you having to visit a workshop.

  After deactivation, an Emergency Request is no longer possible.
- The system can be reactivated by a service center after you sign a new contract.

Initiating an Emergency Request

1. Press the cover briefly to open it.
2. Press the SOS button until the LED in the button lights up.

- The LED lights up: an Emergency Request was initiated.

  If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.
- The LED flashes if the connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established.

  After the Emergency Request arrives at the BMW Assist Response Center, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.

  Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

  For this purpose, data that are used to determine the necessary rescue measures, such as the current position of the vehicle if it can be established, are transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.
- If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard on the hands-free system, the hands-free system

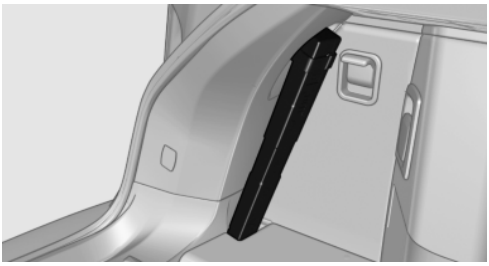
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

may be malfunctioning. However, the BMW Assist Response Center may still be able to hear you.

Initiating an Emergency Request automatically

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the button.

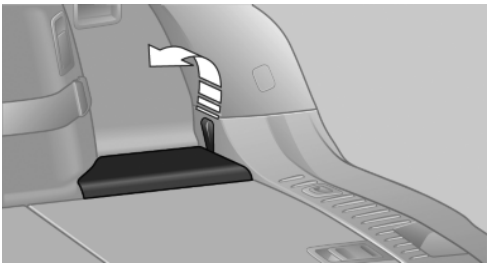
Warning triangle*



The warning triangle is located on the left in the trunk.

Release the Velcro® fastener to remove it.

First aid kit*



The first aid kit is located in a storage compartment on the right side in the trunk.

Fold up the cover to remove it.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any items promptly.

Roadside Assistance

Service availability

Roadside Assistance from the BMW Group provides around-the-clock assistance in the event of a breakdown, including on weekends and holidays.

Phone numbers of the Response Center of Roadside Assistance in your home country: refer to the Contact brochure.

Jump starting

Notes

If the battery is discharged, an engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

Do not touch live parts

To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running.◂

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts and approximately the same capacity in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

Bodywork contact between vehicles

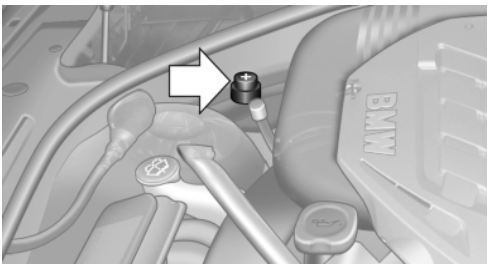
Make sure that there is no contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is the danger of short circuits.◂

Starting aid terminals

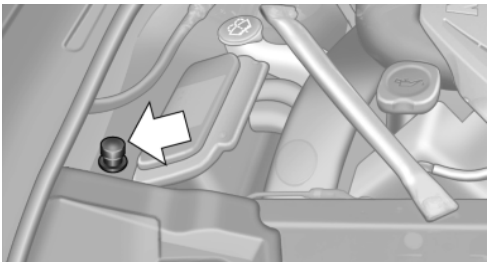
Connecting order

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Connect the jumper cables in the correct order; otherwise, there is the danger of injury from sparking.◂



The so-called starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.



The body ground or a special nut acts as the negative terminal.

Connecting the cables

1. Pull off the cap of the BMW starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle providing assistance.
5. Attach the other end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

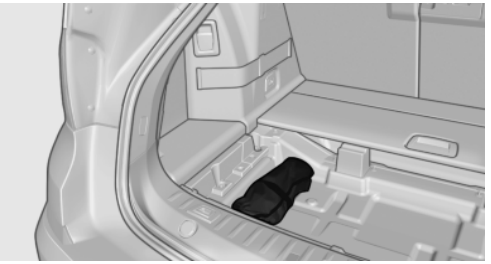
1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the other vehicle as usual.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Tow-starting and towing

Tow fitting



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW. It is located in the tool kit under the trunk floor.

Tow fitting, information on use

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g., do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Otherwise, damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur.◂

Screw thread

Push out the cover by pressing on the arrow symbol.

Towing

General information

Light towing vehicle

The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle response.◄

Attaching the tow bar/tow rope correctly

Attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting; connecting it to other vehicle parts may cause damage.◄

Do not tow when the electronics system has failed.

Do not tow the vehicle when the electronics system has failed; otherwise, the electric steering lock cannot be unlocked and the vehicle cannot be steered.◄

Observe before towing

Vehicle without manual parking lock*:

Transport the vehicle on a loading platform only.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a manual parking lock*, it may not be towed.

Have the vehicle transported on a loading platform only or the vehicle can be damaged.◄

Vehicle with manual parking lock*:

Manually release the transmission lock

Manually release the transmission lock, even if there is no malfunction involving the transmission. Otherwise, there is the danger that the transmission lock will be engaged automatically during towing.◄

Towing*

Observe the notes on towing

Observe all notes on towing or vehicle damage or accidents can occur.◄

- Make sure that the ignition is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals, and windshield wipers may be unavailable.
- Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle raised, as the front wheels could turn.
- When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. Consequently, more force needs to be applied when braking and steering.
- Larger steering wheel movements are required.
- Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.
- If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Adhere to the towing speed and distance

Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h and a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km or damage to the transmission can occur.◄

Towing methods

Do not lift the vehicle

Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◄

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

- Maneuvering capability is limited during cornering.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

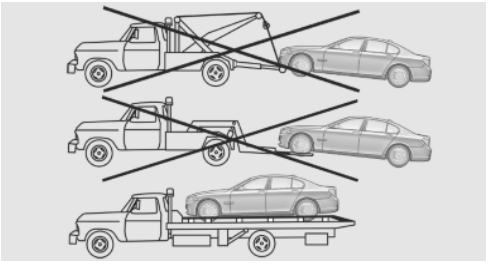
To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.

Attaching the tow rope correctly

Only secure the tow rope on the tow fitting; otherwise, damage can occur when it is secured on other parts of the vehicle.◂

Tow truck

Vehicle without manual parking lock*:



Have vehicles transported on a loading platform only.

Do not tow the vehicle with the front or rear axle lifted individually or the vehicle can be damaged.◂

Do not lift the vehicle.

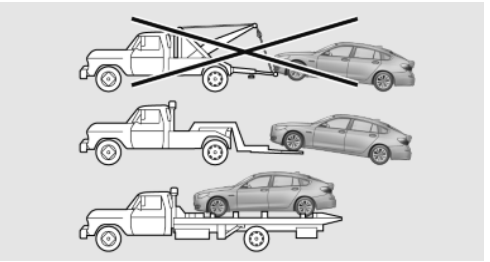
Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◂

Secure the vehicle against rolling off.

Apply the parking brake after towing and secure the vehicle against rolling off if necessary.

Have the operability of transmission position P checked by the service center.◂

Vehicle with manual parking lock*:



Have your vehicle transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

Do not lift the vehicle.

Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◂

Secure the vehicle against rolling off.

Apply the parking brake after towing and secure the vehicle against rolling off if necessary.

Have the operability of transmission position P checked by the service center.◂

Tow-starting

Note

Due to the automatic transmission, the engine cannot be started by tow-starting.

Have the cause of the starting difficulties remedied.

Care

Car washes

Notes

Steam jets or high-pressure washers

When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, hold them a sufficient distance away and use a maximum temperature of 140 °F/ 60 °C.

Holding them too close or using excessively high pressures or temperatures can cause damage or preliminary damage that may then lead to long-term damage.

Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.◂

Cleaning sensors/cameras with high-pressure washers

When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the exterior sensors and cameras, e.g., Park Distance Control*, for extended periods of time and only from a distance of at least 12 in/ 30 cm.◂

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter.

Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Washing in automatic car washes

Your vehicle can be washed in automatic car washes right from the start.

Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.

Notes

Note the following:

- Make sure that the wheels and tires are not damaged by the transport mechanisms.
- Fold in the exterior mirrors; otherwise, they may be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.
- Deactivate the rain sensor, refer to page 71, to avoid unintentional wiper activation.

Guide rails in car washes

Avoid car washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, the vehicle body could be damaged.◂

Before driving into a car wash

The vehicle is able to roll when the following steps are taken:

1. Press on the brake pedal.
2. Engage transmission position N.
3. Release the parking brake, refer to page 67, or deactivate Automatic Hold, refer to page 69.
4. Switch the engine off.

   Transmission position P with the ignition off

   When the ignition is switched off, position P is engaged automatically. When in an automatic car wash, for example, ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally.◂

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in transmission position N.

A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Transmission position

Transmission position P is engaged automatically:

- When the ignition is switched off.
- After approx. 15 minutes.

Headlamps

- Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or caustic cleansers.
- Soak areas that have been soiled e.g. due to insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

▷ Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced and corrosion of the brake discs can occur.

Vehicle care

Car care products

BMW recommends using cleaning and care products from BMW, since these have been tested and approved.

Car care and cleaning products

Follow the instructions on the container.

When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows.

Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles.

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health.◄

Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention.

Environmental influences can act on the vehicle paint. Tailor the frequency and extent of your car care to these influences.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently as dust and dirt are more noticeable.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Suitable care products are available from the service center.

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If they are very dirty, e.g., beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Damage from Velcro® fasteners

Open Velcro® fasteners on pants or other articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.◄

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

Use wheel cleaner, particularly during the winter months. Do not use aggressive, acidic, strongly alkaline or abrasive cleaners, or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C; follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Chrome surfaces*

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components

Aside from water, treat only with rubber cleansers.

When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing car care products in order to avoid damage or reduced noise damping.

Fine wood parts*

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

These include:

- Headliner.
- Lamp lenses.
- Instrument cluster cover.
- Matte black spray-coated components.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Moisten the cloth lightly and use plastic cleanser, if necessary.

Do not soak the headliner.

Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents

Do not use cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such; this could lead to surface damage.◄

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Chemical cleaning

Do not clean chemically; this can destroy the webbing.◄

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the reels to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats*

Floor mats can be removed from the passenger compartment for cleaning.

If they are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or an interior cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensors/cameras

To clean the sensors or cameras of equipment such as the High-beam Assistant*, Active Cruise Control* or Night Vision*, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

Displays/screens

Use a microfiber cloth to clean the Control Display or the Head-up Display*.

Cleaning displays

Do not use chemical or household cleansers.

Keep all fluids and moisture away from the unit.

Otherwise, they could affect or damage surfaces or electrical components.

Avoid pressing too hard when cleaning and do not use abrasive materials; otherwise, damage can result.◄

Long-term vehicle storage

Your service center can advise you on what to consider when storing the vehicle for longer than three months.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Reference

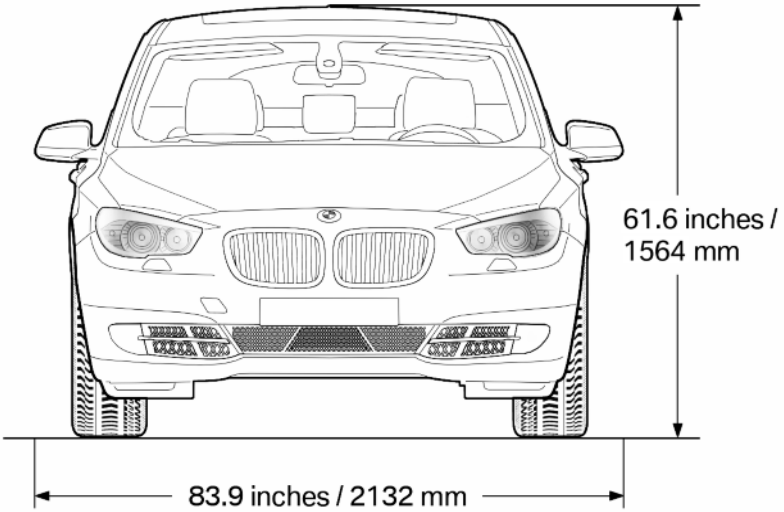
This chapter contains technical data, short commands for the voice activation system, and an index that will quickly take you to the information you need.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

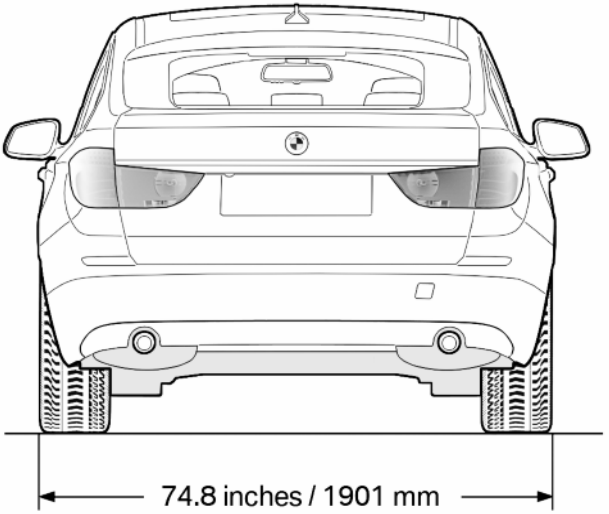
Technical data

Dimensions

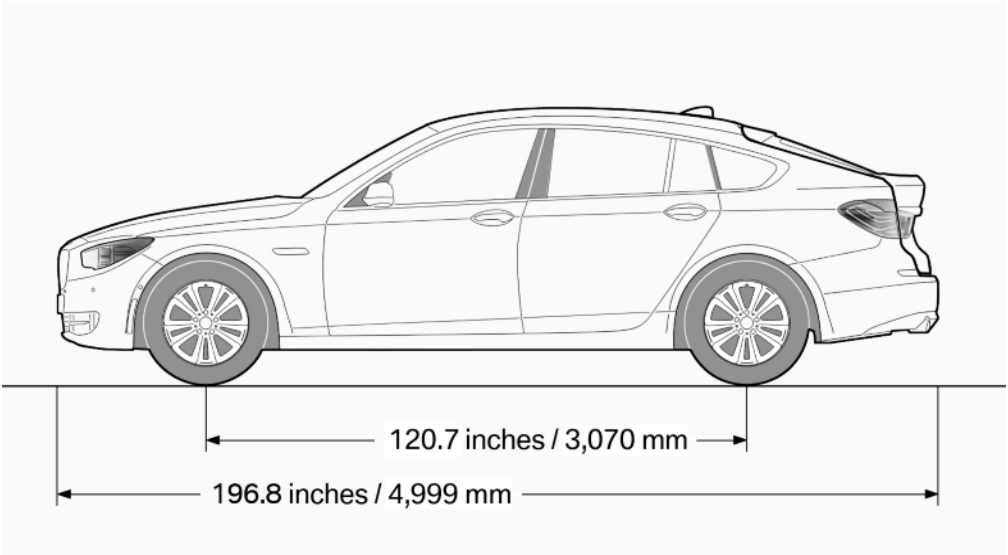
Width with mirrors, height with roof-mounted aerial



Width without mirrors



Length, wheel base



Smallest turning circle

Ø: 40 ft/12.2 m

Engine specifications

The rated power outputs are established on the basis of fuel grade AKI 91.

535i		
Displacement	cu in/cm³	181.8/2,979
No. of cylinders		6
Maximum output at engine speed	hp rpm	300 5,800-6,250
Maximum torque at engine speed	lb ft/Nm rpm	300/407 1,200-5,000

550i		
Displacement	cu in/cm³	268.2/4,395
No. of cylinders		8

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

550i		
Maximum output	hp	400
at engine speed	rpm	5,500-6,400
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	450/610
at engine speed	rpm	1,750-4,500

Weights

535i		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,667/2,570
Load	lbs/kg	1,014/460
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,580/1,170
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,263/1,480
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75
Trunk capacity	cu ft/l	15.5-60/440-1,700

550i		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,954/2,700
Load	lbs/kg	1,014/460
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,811/1,275
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,308/1,500
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75
Trunk capacity	cu ft/l	15.5-60/440-1,700

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	approx. 18.5/70	Fuel quality, refer to page 226
Windshield and headlamp washer system	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5.0	

Short commands for voice activation system

General information

Instructions for voice activation system, refer to page 25.

To have the available spoken instructions read out loud: ›Voice commands‹

Useful short commands

Function	Command
Owner's Manual	›Owner's Manual‹
Opening the music collection	›Music collection‹
Opening the tone settings	›Tone‹
Opening the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the profiles	›Profiles‹
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the contacts	›Contacts‹
Displaying the phone book	›Phonebook‹
Opening BMW Assist	›B M W Assist‹
Opening the destination input	›Enter address‹

CD/multimedia*

CD/DVD drive

Function	Command
Playing back a CD	›C D on‹
Selecting a CD	›Select C D‹
Selecting a CD and track	›C D ... track ... ‹ e.g., CD 3 track 5
Selecting a track	›C D track ... ‹ e.g., track 5
Opening the CD and multimedia menu	›C D and multimedia‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Function	Command
CD and DVD	›C D‹
Displaying entertainment details on the split screen	›Entertainment details‹

Music collection

Function	Command
Calling up the current playback	›Current playback‹
Opening the music collection	›Music collection‹
Playing the music collection	›Music collection on‹
Searching for music; opening the menu	›Music search‹
Playing back the most frequently played tracks	›Top fifty‹

External devices

Function	Command
Opening external devices	›External devices‹
Call up Bluetooth devices	›Bluetooth‹
AUX front	›AUX front‹

Tone

Function	Command
Opening the tone settings	›Tone‹

Radio

FM

Function	Command
Calling up the radio	›Radio‹
Calling up an FM station	›F M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual‹

Function	Command
Calling up a frequency	›Frequency ... megahertz‹ e.g., 93.5 megahertz or frequency 93.5
Selecting the frequency range	›Select frequency‹

AM

Function	Command
Calling up an AM station	›A M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual‹
Calling up a frequency	›Frequency ... Kilohertz‹ e.g., frequency 753 or 753 kilohertz

Weather Band

Function	Command
Calling up the Weather Band	›Weather band‹
Switching on the Weather Band	›Weather band on‹
Selecting a Weather Band station	›Select a weather channel‹

Satellite radio

Function	Command
Calling up the satellite radio	›Satellite radio‹
Switching on the satellite radio	›Satellite radio on‹
Selecting a satellite radio channel	›Select satellite radio‹ e.g., satellite radio channel 2

Stored stations

Function	Command
Opening the stored stations	›Presets‹
Choosing a stored station	›Select preset‹
Selecting a stored station	›Preset ... ‹ e.g., stored station 2

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Telephone*

Function	Command
Opening the Telephone menu	›Telephone‹
Displaying the phone book	›Phonebook‹
Redialing	›Redial‹
Displaying accepted calls	›Received calls‹
Dialing a phone number	›Dial number‹
List of messages	›Messages‹
Call up Bluetooth devices	›Bluetooth‹

Navigation*

General information

Function	Command
Navigation menu	›Navigation‹
Opening the destination input	›Enter address‹
Entering the address	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance	›Guidance‹
Starting destination guidance	›Start guidance‹
Terminating destination guidance	›Stop guidance‹
Opening the home address	›Home address‹
Opening the route criteria	›Route preference‹
Opening the route	›Route information‹
Switching on the spoken instructions	›Switch on voice instructions‹
Repeating a spoken instruction	›Repeat voice instructions‹
Switching off the spoken instructions	›Switch off voice instructions‹
Displaying the address book	›Address book‹
Displaying the last destinations	›Last destinations‹
Opening the traffic bulletins	›Traffic Info‹
Special destinations	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Displaying the map	›Map‹
Map facing north	›Map facing north‹
Map in the direction of travel	›Map in direction of travel‹
Perspective map	›Map perspective view‹
Automatic scaling of the map	›Map with automatic scaling‹
Scale...feet	›Map scale ... feet‹
Scale...miles	›Map scale ... miles‹ e.g., map scale 5 miles

Split screen settings

Function	Command
Split screen	›Switch on splitscreen‹
Switching off the split screen	›Turn off split screen‹
Adapting the split screen	›Split screen content‹
Split screen, map facing north	›Split screen map facing north‹
Split screen, current position	›Split screen current position‹
Split screen, direction of travel	›Split screen map in direction of travel‹
Split screen, perspective	›Split screen perspective‹
Split screen, wider intersection zoom	›Splitscreen Exit ramp view‹
Split screen scale...feet	›Split screen scale ... feet‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 feet
Split screen scale...miles	›Split screen scale ... miles‹ e.g., split screen scale 5 miles
Split screen, highlighting traffic bulletins	›Split screen, Traffic conditions‹
Split screen, computer	›Split screen on board info‹
Split screen, trip computer	›Splitscreen trip computer‹
Automatically scaling the split screen	›Split screen automatic scaling‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Destination guidance with intermediate destinations

Function	Command
New destination entry	›Enter address‹
Trip list	›Stored trips‹

Contacts*

Function	Command
My contacts	›My contacts‹
Opening the contacts	›Contacts‹
New contact	›New contact‹

BMW Assist*

Function	Command
Opening BMW Assist	›B M W Assist‹
Opening BMW Search	›B M W Search‹

Vehicle information

Owner's Manual

Function	Command
Opening the Owner's Manual	›Display Owner's Manual‹
Opening the Quick Reference	›Quick reference‹
Opening the keyword search	›Owner's Manual‹
Opening Search by pictures	›Search by pictures‹

Computer

Function	Command
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the trip computer	›Trip computer‹

Vehicle

Function	Command
Opening the vehicle information	›Vehicle info‹
Opening the vehicle status	›Vehicle status‹

Adjusting

Vehicle

Function	Command
Opening the main menu	›Main menu‹
Opening the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the options	›Options‹
Info display of the instrument cluster	›Info Display‹
Central display settings	›Control display‹
Opening the time and date settings	›Time and date‹
Opening the language and unit settings	›Language and units‹
Opening the speed limit settings	›Speed‹
Opening the light settings	›Lighting‹
Opening the door lock settings	›Door locks‹
Opening the profiles	›Profiles‹

Equipment*

Function	Command
Opening the air conditioning settings	›Climate‹
Opening the Head-up Display settings	›head up display‹
Enabling the rear seat	›Allow rear control‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

ABS, Antilock Brake System 101
ACC Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go 107
Accessories and parts 7
Activated-charcoal filter 130
Active Blind Spot Detection 98
Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go, ACC 107
Active seat, front 50
Active seat ventilation, front 51
Active seat ventilation, rear 53
Active Steering, integral 102
Adaptive brake assistant 101
Adaptive brake lights, refer to Brake force display 100
Adaptive light control 87
Adaptive light control, bulb replacement 241
Additives, oil 236
Adjustments, seats/head restraints 48
After washing vehicle 252
Airbags 90
Air circulation, refer to Recirculated-air mode 129
Air distribution, manual 128
Air drying, refer to Cooling function 130
Air pressure, tires 227
Air vents, refer to Ventilation 131
Air volume, automatic climate control 129
Alarm system 42
Alarm, unintentional 43
All around the center console 17
All around the headliner 18
All around the steering wheel 12
ALL program, automatic climate control 130
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 231
Alternating-code hand-held transmitter 135
Alternative oil types 236
AM/FM station 174
Announcement, navigation, refer to Spoken instructions 163
Antifreeze, washer fluid 72
Antilock Brake System, ABS 101
Anti-slip control, refer to DSC 101
Approved engine oils 236
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 141
Ashtray 136
Assist 216
Assistance, Roadside Assistance 247
Assistance when driving off 106
Audio playback 181
AUTO intensity 129
Automatic car wash 251
Automatic climate control 128
Automatic Cruise Control with Stop & Go 107
Automatic Curb Monitor 59
Automatic deactivation, front passenger airbags 91
Automatic headlamp control 87
Automatic Hold 68
Automatic locking 38
Automatic recirculated-air control 129
Automatic Soft Closing, doors 38
Automatic Soft Closing, tailgate 39
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 72
Automatic trunk lid 39
AUTO program, automatic climate control 129
AUTO program, intensity 129
AUX-IN port 192
Axle loads, weights 258

B

Backrest curvature, refer to Lumbar support 50
Backrest, seats 48
Backrest width 50
Back seats, adjusting 51
Backup camera 120
Backup lamps, bulb replacement 243
Balance 172
Band-aids, refer to First aid kit 247
Bar for tow-starting/towing 249
Basic position, rear seats 53
Bass 172
Battery replacement, remote control, rear entertainment 197
Battery replacement, vehicle battery 244
Battery replacement, vehicle remote control 32
Battery, vehicle 244
Before entering the car wash 251
Belts, safety belts 53

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Beverage holder, cupholder 142
Blinds, sun protection 45
Bluetooth connection, activating/deactivating 205
BMW Assist 216
BMW EfficientDynamics, refer to Saving fuel 150
BMW homepage 6
BMW Internet page 6
BMW Maintenance System 238
BMW Search 218
Bottle holder, refer to Cupholder 142
Brake assistant 101
Brake assistant, adaptive 101
Brake discs, breaking in 146
Brake force display 100
Brake lamps, brake force display 100
Brake lamps, bulb replacement 242
Brake lights, adaptive 100
Brake pads, breaking in 146
Braking, notes 147
Breakdown assistance 246, 247
Breaking in 146
Brightness of Control Display 81
Bulb replacement 240
Bulb replacement, front 241
Bulb replacement, rear 242
Bulbs and lamps 240
Button, Start/Stop 65
Bypassing, see starting aid 247

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 7
Camera, backup camera 122
Camera, care 253
Camera, Side View 123
Camera, Top View 120
Can holder, refer to Cupholder 142
Car battery 244
Car care products 252
Care, vehicle 252
Cargo 148
Cargo straps, securing cargo 149
Car key, refer to Remote control 32
Carpet, care 253
Car wash 251
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 146
Category details, special destinations 157
CBS Condition Based Service 238
CD/DVD 181
CD/DVD player, rear 196
CDs, storing 187
Cell phone 204
Center armrest 141
Center console 17
Central locking system 35
Central screen, refer to Control Display 19
Changes, technical, refer to Safety 6
Changing parts 240
Changing wheels/tires 231
Check Control 83
Children, seating position 61
Children, transporting safely 61
Child restraint fixing system 61
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 62
Child restraint fixing systems, mounting 61
Child-safety locks 64
Child seat, mounting 61
Child seats 61
Chrome parts, care 252
Cigarette lighter 136
Climate control 128
Climate control windshield 147
Clock 76
Closing/opening from inside 38
Closing/opening via door lock 37
Closing/opening with remote control 35
Clothes hooks 142
Collision warning, iBrake 112
Combination instrument 14
Combination instrument, electronic displays 16
Combination switch, refer to Turn signals 70
Combination switch, refer to Wiper system 70
Comfort Access 41
COMFORT program, Dynamic Driving Control 105
Computer 78
Concierge service 217
Condensation on windows 129
Condensation under the vehicle 148
Condition Based Service CBS 238
Confirmation signal 37
Contacts 213
Control Display 19
Control Display, care 253
Control Display, settings 80
Controller 19
Control systems, driving stability 101
Convenient opening 36
Convenient operation 37
Coolant 237
Coolant temperature 76
Cooling function 130
Cooling, maximum 129
Cooling system 237
Corrosion on brake discs 148
Cruise control 114
Cruise control, active with stop-and-go 107

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Cruising range 77
Cupholder 142
Curb weight 258
Current fuel consumption 76
Current location, storing 156
Customer Relations 219

D

Damage, tires 230
Damping Control, dynamic 102
Data, technical 256
Date 76
Daytime running lights 87
Defrosting, refer to Windows, defrosting 129
Destination guidance 161
Destination guidance with intermediate destinations 160
Destination input, navigation 154
Detour, selecting 167
Digital clock 76
Digital radio 175
Dimensions 256
Dimmable mirrors 59
Direction indicator, refer to Turn signals 70
Displacement, engine 257
Display, instrument cluster 75
Display in windshield 126
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 89
Displays 14
Displays, care 253
Disposal, coolant 237
Disposal, vehicle battery 244
Distance control, refer to PDC 115
Distance, selecting for ACC 108
Divided screen view, split screen 23
Door lock, refer to Remote control 32
Doors, Automatic Soft Closing 38
Drive-off assistant 106
Drive-off assistant, refer to DSC 101
Driving instructions, breaking in 146
Driving notes, general 146
Driving stability control systems 101
Driving tips 146
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 101
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 101
DVD/CD 181
DVD/CD notes 186
DVD/CD player, rear 196
DVD changer 185
DVD settings 184
DVDs, storing 187
DVD, video 183
Dynamic Damping Control 102
Dynamic destination guidance 162
Dynamic Drive 102
Dynamic Driving Control 103
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 101
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 101

E

EfficientDynamics, refer to Saving fuel 150
Electronic displays, instrument cluster 16
Electronic engine oil level check 236
Electronic Stability Program ESP, refer to DSC 101
Emergency detection, remote control 33
Emergency release, door lock 38
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 224
Emergency release, parking brake 67
Emergency Request 246
Emergency service, refer to Roadside Assistance 247
Emergency start function, engine start 33
Emergency unlocking, tailgate 41
Energy Control 76
Energy regeneration 77
Engine compartment 234
Engine compartment, working in 234
Engine coolant 237
Engine oil 236
Engine oil, adding 236
Engine oil additives 236
Engine oil filler neck 236
Engine oil temperature 76
Engine oil types, alternative 236
Engine oil types, approved 236
Engine specifications 257
Engine start during malfunction 33
Engine start, Help 247
Engine start, refer to Starting the engine 65
Engine stop 66
Engine temperature 76
Equalizer 172
Equipment, interior 134
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC 101
Exchanging wheels/tires 231
Exhaust system 146
Exterior mirrors 58
External devices 192
External start 247
External temperature display 75
External temperature warning 75
Eyes for securing cargo 149

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

F

Fader 172
Failure message, refer to Check Control 83
False alarm, refer to Unintentional alarm 43
Fan, refer to Air volume 129
Fault displays, refer to Check Control 83
Filler neck for engine oil 236
Fine wood, care 252
First aid kit 247
Fitting for towing, refer to Tow fitting 248
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 95
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 92
Flat tire, warning lamp 93, 96
Flat tire, wheel change 243
Flooding 147
Floor carpet, care 253
Floor mats, care 253
FM/AM station 174
Fold-out position, windshield wipers 72
Foot brake 147
Front airbags 90
Front fog lamps 89
Front fog lamps, front, bulb replacement 242
Front lamps 241
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 91
Front passenger airbags, indicator lamp 92
Front seats, adjusting 48
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 95
Fuel cap 224
Fuel consumption, current 76
Fuel filler flap 224
Fuel gauge 77
Fuel quality 226
Fuel, tank capacity 258
Fuse 245

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 134
Gas station recommendation 163
Gear change, automatic transmission 73
General driving notes 146
Glass sunroof, refer to Panoramic glass sunroof 45
Glove compartment 140
GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 154
Gross vehicle weight, approved 258
Gross weight, permissible for trailer towing 258

H

Hand brake, refer to Parking brake 66
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 135
Hazard warning flashers 246
HD Radio 175
Head airbags 90
Headlamp control, automatic 87
Headlamp courtesy delay feature 86
Headlamp courtesy delay feature via remote control 36
Headlamp flasher 70
Headlamp glass 241
Headlamps 241
Headlamps, care 251
Headlamp washer system 70
Headliner 18
Headphones, rear entertainment 199
Head restraints 48
Head restraints, front 55
Head restraints, rear 56
Head-up Display 126
Head-up Display, care 253
Heavy cargo, stowing 149
Height, seats 48
Height with roof-mounted aerial, vehicle 256
High-beam assistant 88
High beams 70
High beams/low beams, refer to High-beam assistant 88
Hills 147
Hill start assistant, refer to Drive-off assistant 106
Holder for beverages 142
Homepage 6
Hood 234
Horn 12
Hotel function, tailgate 41
Hot exhaust system 146
House number, entering for navigation 155
HUD, Head-up Display 126
Hydroplaning 147

I

iBrake, collision warning 112
Ice warning, refer to External temperature warning 75
Icy roads, refer to External temperature warning 75
Identification marks, tires 229
Identification number, refer to Engine compartment 234
iDrive 19
Ignition key, refer to Remote control 32
Ignition off 65
Ignition on 65
Indication of a flat tire 93, 96
Indicator and warning messages 14
Indicator lamps 14
Individual air distribution 128
Individual settings, refer to Personal Profile 33
Inflation pressure monitor, tires 92
Inflation pressure, tires 227

Inflation pressure warning, tires 95
Info display 75
Information on navigation data 167
Initialization, Integral Active Steering 102
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 95
Initializing, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 93
Instrument cluster 14, 75
Instrument cluster, electronic displays 16
Instrument lighting 89
Integral Active Steering 102
Integrated key 32
Integrated universal remote control 134
Intensity, AUTO program 129
Interactive map 159
Interior equipment 134
Interior lamps 89
Interior lamps via remote control 36
Interior motion sensor 43
Interior rearview and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature 59
Interior rearview mirror 59
Intermediate destinations 160
Internet page 6
Intersection, entering for navigation 155
Interval display, service requirements 82
iPod/iPhone 193

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 244
Jack, refer to Vehicle jack 244
Joystick, automatic transmission 73

K

Key/remote control 32
Keyless Go, refer to Comfort Access 41
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 33
Kickdown, automatic transmission 73
Knee airbag 90

L

Lamp replacement 240
Lamp replacement, front 241
Lamp replacement, rear 242
Lamps 86
Lamps and bulbs 240
Lane departure warning 97
Lane margin, warning 97
Language on Control Display 81
Lashing eyes, securing cargo 149
LATCH child restraint fixing system 62
Leather, care 252
LEDs, light-emitting diodes 240
Length, vehicle 257
Letters and numbers, entering 24
License plate lamp, bulb replacement 242
Light-alloy wheels, care 252
Light control 87
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs 240
Lighter, front 136
Lighting 86
Lighting via remote control 36
Light switch 86
Load 149
Loading 148
Loading position 139
Lock, door 37
Locking/unlocking from inside 38
Locking/unlocking via door lock 37
Locking/unlocking with remote control 35
Locking, automatic 38
Locking, central 35
Locking via tailgate 39
Lock, power window 45
Locks, doors, and windows 64
Low beams 86
Low beams, automatic, refer to High-beam assistant 88
Lower back support 50
Lug bolt lock 244
Luggage compartment lid 38
Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 149
Lumbar support 50

M

Maintenance 238
Maintenance requirements 238
Maintenance, service requirements 82
Maintenance system, BMW 238
Malfunction displays, refer to Check Control 83
Malfunction, self-leveling suspension 103
Manual air distribution 128
Manual air volume 129
Manual brake, refer to Parking brake 66
Manual mode, transmission 73
Manual operation, backup camera 120
Manual operation, door lock 38
Manual operation, exterior mirrors 58

Manual operation, fuel filler flap 224
Manual operation, Park Distance Control PDC 116
Manual operation, parking brake 67
Manual operation, Side View 122
Manual operation, Top View 119
Map, destination entry 158
Map in split screen 164
Map view 164
Marking on approved tires 231
Marking, run-flat tires 232
Massage seat, front 50
Master key, refer to Remote control 32
Maximum cooling 129
Maximum speed, display 84
Maximum speed, winter tires 231
Measure, units of 81
Medical kit 247
Memory for seat, mirrors, steering wheel 57
Menu in instrument cluster 77
Menus, operating, iDrive 19
Menus, refer to iDrive operating concept 20
Message list, traffic bulletins 165
Microfilter 130
Minimum tread, tires 230
Mirror 58
Mirror memory 57
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 147
Mobile phone 204
Modifications, technical, refer to Safety 6
Moisture in headlamp 241
Monitor, refer to Control Display 19
Mounting of child restraint fixing systems 61
MP3 player 192
Multi-function hook 143
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 12
Multimedia 181
Music collection 187
Music search 189
Music, storing 187

N

Navigation 154
Navigation data 167
Neck restraints, front, refer to Head restraints 55
Neck restraints, rear, refer to Head restraints 56
New wheels and tires 231
Night Vision with pedestrian detection 123
NORMAL program, Dynamic Driving Control 105
Notes 6
Number of cylinders, engine 257
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 250

O

OBD Onboard Diagnostics 238
Obstacle marking, backup camera 121
Odometer 75
Oil 236
Oil, adding 236
Oil additives 236
Oil change interval, service requirements 82
Oil filler neck 236
Oil level check 236
Oil types, alternative 236
Oil types, approved 236
Old batteries, disposal 244
Onboard computer, refer to Computer 78
Onboard Diagnostics OBD 238
Onboard monitor, refer to Control Display 19
Opening/closing from inside 38
Opening/closing via door lock 37
Opening/closing with remote control 35
Operating concept, iDrive 19
Outside air, refer to Automatic recirculated-air control 129
Outside temperature warning 75
Overheating of engine, refer to Coolant temperature 76

P

Paint, vehicle 252
Pairing, mobile phone 204
Panic mode 36
Panoramic glass sunroof 45
Park Distance Control PDC 115
Parked-car ventilation 133
Parked vehicle, condensation 148
Parking aid, refer to PDC 115
Parking brake 66
Parking lamps 86
Parking lamps, bulb replacement 242
Parking with Auto Hold 68
Parts and accessories 7
Passenger side mirror, tilting downward 59
Pathway lines, backup camera 120
PDC Park Distance Control 115
Pedestrian detection, refer to Night Vision 123
People detection, refer to Night Vision 123
Permissible axle load 258
Personal Profile 33

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Pinch protection system, glass sunroof 46
Pinch protection system, windows 44
Plastic, care 253
Position, storing 156
Postal code, entering in navigation 155
Power failure 244
Power output, engine 257
Power windows 44
Pressure monitor, tires 92
Pressure, tire air pressure 227
Pressure warning, tires 95
Profile, refer to Personal Profile 33
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 23
Protective function, glass sunroof 46
Protective function, windows 44
Push-and-turn switch, refer to Controller 19

R

Radiator fluid 237
Radio 174
Radio-operated key, refer to Remote control 32
Radio ready state 65
Rain sensor 71
Random 182
Random playback 182
RDS 175
Rear automatic climate control 132
Rear axle steering 102
Rear entertainment 196
Rear fog lamp, bulb replacement 243
Rear lamps 242
Rear seats, adjusting 51
Rear seats, basic position 53
Rear sockets 137
Rearview mirror 58
Rear window defroster 130
Recirculated-air mode 129
Recommended tire brands 231
Refueling 224
Release tool 240
Remaining range 77
Remote control/key 32
Remote control, malfunction 37
Remote control, rear entertainment 197
Remote control, universal 134
Replacement fuse 245
Replacing parts 240
Replacing wheels/tires 231
Reporting safety defects 8
Reserve warning, refer to Range 77
Resetting, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 93
Residual heat, automatic climate control 130
Retaining straps, securing cargo 149
Retreaded tires 231
Road, avoiding 162
Road detour 162
Roadside Assistance 217
Roadside parking lamps 87
Roller sunblinds 45
Roll stabilization, refer to Dynamic Drive 102
Roof load capacity 258
Roof-mounted luggage rack 149
Rope for tow-starting/towing 250
Route 162
Route criteria, route 162
Route, displaying 162
Route section, bypassing 163
RPM, engine 257
RSC Runflat System Component, refer to Run-flat tires 232
Rubber components, care 252
Run-flat tires 232
Run-flat tires, flat tire 93, 96

S

Safe braking 147
Safety 6
Safety belt reminder 54
Safety belts 53
Safety belts, care 253
Safety switch, windows 45
Safety systems, airbags 90
Satellite radio 176
Saving fuel 150
Scale, changing during navigation 164
Screen, refer to Control Display 19
Screw driver 240
Screw thread for tow fitting 249
Search, refer to BMW Search 218
Seat belts, refer to Safety belts 53
Seat heating, front 50
Seat heating, rear 53
Seating position for children 61
Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory 57
Seats 48
Seats, rear, adjusting 51
Seat ventilation, front 51
Seat ventilation, rear 53
Selection list in instrument cluster 77
Selector lever, automatic transmission 73
Self-leveling suspension, air suspension 103
Self-leveling suspension, malfunction 103
Sensors, care 253
Service and warranty 7

Service requirements, CBS Condition Based Service 238
Service requirements, display 82
Service, Roadside Assistance 247
Settings on Control Display 80
Settings, storing for seat, mirrors, steering wheel 57
Shifting, automatic transmission 72
Short commands 259
Shoulder support 50
Side airbags 90
Side View 122
Signaling, horn 12
Signals when unlocking 37
Sitting safely 48
Size 256
Ski and snowboard bag 139
Slide/tilt glass roof 45
Smallest turning circle 257
Smoker's package 136
Snap-in adapter, mobile phone 212
Snow chains 232
Socket 136
Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics 238
Spare fuse 245
Special destinations, navigation 157
Specified oil types 236
Speed limit detection 84
Speed limit, setting 78
Speedometer 14
Split screen 23
Split screen map settings 164
Spoken instructions, navigation 163
SPORT+ program, Dynamic Driving Control 104
SPORT program, Dynamic Driving Control 104
Sport program, transmission 73
Stability control systems 101
Start/Stop button 65
Start function during malfunction 33
Starting aid 247
Starting the engine 65
State/province, selecting for navigation 154
Stations, stored 180
Station, storing 174
Status display, tires 93
Status information, iDrive 22
Status of Owner's Manual 6
Steering, Integral Active Steering 102
Steering wheel, adjusting 59
Steering wheel heating 60
Steering wheel memory 57
Steptronic, automatic transmission 72
Stopping the engine 66
Storage compartment in the center console 142
Storage compartments 140
Storage compartments, locations 140
Storage, tires 232
Storing the vehicle 253
Street, entering for navigation 155
Summer tires, tread 230
Surround View 118
Suspension settings 103
Switch for Dynamic Driving Control 103
Switch-on times, parked-car ventilation 133
Switch, refer to Cockpit 12
Symbols 6

T

Tachometer 76
Tail and brake lamps 242
Tailgate 38
Tailgate, automatic 39
Tailgate, emergency unlocking 41
Tailgate, hotel function 41
Tailgate via remote control 36
Tail lamps 242
Tail lamps, bulb replacement 242
Technical changes, refer to Safety 6
Technical data 256
Telephone 204
TeleService 217
Temperature, automatic climate control 129
Temperature display, external temperature 75
Temperature, engine oil 76
Terminal 0 65
Terminal 15 65
Terminal R 65
Terminal, starting aid 247
Theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 42
Theft protection, lug bolts 244
Theft protection, refer to Central locking system 35
Thermal camera, refer to Night Vision 123
Thigh support 48
Through-loading system 137
Tilt alarm sensor 43
Tilt, seats 48
Tire age 231
Tire damage 230
Tire identification marks 229
Tire inflation pressure 227
Tire inflation pressure monitor, refer to FTM 95
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 92
Tires, changing 231
Tires, everything on wheels and tires 227
Tires, flat tire 244
Tires, run-flat tires 232
Tire tread 230
Toll roads, route 162

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

Tone 172
Tool kit 240
Tools 240
Top View 118
Torque, engine 257
Total vehicle weight 258
Tow fitting 248
Towing 248
Town/city, navigation 154
Tow-starting 248
Tow truck 250
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 92
Traction control 101
TRACTION program, Dynamic Driving Control 104
Traffic bulletins, navigation 165
Traffic obstruction, bypassing 167
Traffic situation/gray card 166
Transmission, automatic 72
Transporting children safely 61
Tread, tires 230
Treble, tone 172
Trip computer 79
Triple turn signal activation 70
Trip odometer 75
Truck for tow-starting/towing 250
Trunk 137
Trunk cover 137
Trunk, expanding 137
Trunk lid 38
Trunk lid, automatic 39
Trunk lid, emergency unlocking 41
Trunk lid, hotel function 41
Trunk lid via remote control 36
Trunk partition 138
Trunk, storage compartments 143
Turning circle 257
Turning circle lines, backup camera 121
Turn signals, front, bulb replacement 241
Turn signals, operation 70
Turn signals, rear, bulb replacement 242

U

Unintentional alarm 43
Units of measure 81
Universal remote control 134
Unlock button, automatic transmission 73
Unlocking/locking from inside 38
Unlocking/locking via door lock 37
Unlocking/locking with remote control 35
Upholstery care 252
USB audio interface 193
USB interface 140

V

Variable Damping Control, refer to Dynamic Damping Control 102
Variable steering, Integral Active Steering 102
Vehicle battery 244
Vehicle battery, replacing 244
Vehicle, breaking in 146
Vehicle care 252
Vehicle identification number, refer to Identification number in the engine compartment 234
Vehicle jack 244
Vehicle paint 252
Vehicle storage 253
Vehicle wash 251
Ventilation 131
Ventilation, refer to Parked-car ventilation 133
Version of navigation data 167
Video playback 183
Voice activation, mobile phone 210
Voice activation, short commands 259
Voice activation system 25
Volume, setting 172

W

Warning lamps 14
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 83
Warning triangle 247
Washer fluid 72
Washer fluid reservoir, capacity 258
Washer nozzles, windshield 71
Washer system 70
Washing, vehicle 251
Water on roads 147
Weather Band 175
Weights 258
Welcome lamps 86
Wheel base, vehicle 257
Wheel change 243
Wheels, changing 231
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires 227
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 95
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 92
Width with mirrors, vehicle 256
Width without mirrors, vehicle 256
Window defroster, rear 130
Windows, powered 44
Windshield, climate control 147
Windshield washer fluid 72
Windshield washer nozzles 71

Windshield washer system 70
Windshield wiper 70
Windshield wipers, fold-out position 72
Winter storage, care 253
Winter tires, suitable tires 231
Winter tires, tread 230
Wiper blades, replacing 240
Wiper fluid 72
Wiper system 70
Wood, care 252
Word match concept, navigation 24
Wrench 240

X

Xenon headlamps, bulb replacement 241

Y

Your individual vehicle 6

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate Driving Machine

01 41 2 604 413 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 604 413 - 03 10 500